This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR

DRILL, SABRE EXERCISE, EQUITATION, FORMATION AND FIELD MOVEMENTS OF

CAVALRY.

ILLUSTRATED WITH PLATES.

BEING A SECOND EDITION OF CAVALRY DISCIPLINE.

By E. HOYT, Esq. 
Brigade Major and Inspector in the Militia of Massachusetts.

REVISED, CORRECTED AND ENLARGED

BY THE AUTHOR.

GREENFIELD, (Mass.)

PRINTED BY AND FOR DENIO AND PHELPS;
SOLD BY THEM AT THEIR BOOKSTORE, GREENFIELD—
ALSO BY ISAIAH THOMAS, JR. AND CHARLES WILLIAMS,
BOSTON—OLIVER D. COOKE, HARTFORD.

1813.
DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, to wit:
District Clerk’s Office.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the twenty-eighth day of May, A. D. 1813, and in the thirty-seventh year of the independence of the United States of America, Epaphras Hoyt, of the said district, has deposited in this office the title of a book the right whereof he claims, as author, in the words following, to wit:


In conformity to the act of the congress of the United States, intitled, “an act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned;” and also to an act intitled, “an act supplementary to an act, intitled, “an act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving and etching historical, and other prints.”

Wm. S. Shaw,
Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.
PREFACE.

THE following Rules and Regulations are respectfully presented to the officers and soldiers of the Cavalry of the United States; with a hope that they may prove of some utility in introducing uniformity and precision in the exercise and movements necessary for corps of Cavalry, on parade and in the field.

A very imperfect work of the kind, under the title of "Discipline for the Cavalry," was laid before the public, by the writer, in the year 1798; and being now out of print, he has, at the solicitation of a number of cavalry officers, been induced to undertake a new edition, which is now completed, and here offered to the public under a new arrangement, revised, corrected and enlarged. Every part of the work has been written anew, recent information sought, much matter added, and, though the writer is far from supposing it without faults, he confidently hopes the work is more worthy of patronage.

The drill, Part I, comprises, in as concise a form as the nature of the principles would admit, all the instructions deemed essential for the recruit and his horse. The sabre exercise, an indispensable part, is conformable to the system of Col. Le Marchant; but it is much abridged, and new explanations are given, by which, it is believed, the whole will be more easily understood by the young officer, as well as the recruit.

The movements of the troop, squadron and regiment, in Part II and III, are in general executed on predetermined and fixed points, conformably to the principles of the modern tactics of infantry and cavalry, as laid down in the latest European treatises. The movements might have been multiplied, but sufficient, it is believed, have been inserted for the intelligent officer.

Part IV, which treats of the duties of cavalry in the field, comprehends such subjects as appeared indispensably necessary for the young officer on his first entering the service. The limits of a pocket volume would not admit of a more full development of the various subjects. Those gentlemen who are desirous of further instruction will consult more extensive works on field
duties, several of which are pointed out in the *catalogue* of military authors in the *introduction* to the work; in which an attempt has been made to lay down a course of study deemed necessary for an officer who wishes to make a science of his profession.

Cavalry, by proper discipline, may be brought to an astonishing degree of perfection. The horses may be so instructed as to perform many of the movements without their riders; and, as they do not like men reflect on their danger, by rendering them familiar with the noises and sights of battle, they are easily led to the attack, with great intrepidity. A spirited and well disciplined squadron, when conducted by an able officer, will perform wonders. But no prudent commander will ever suffer them long to remain under the fire of the enemy's musketry or artillery. Their place, in the order of battle, is generally behind some eminence or other cover, or at some distance in the rear of the line engaged, where they remain as corps of reserve till a favorable opportunity offers for engaging, or until ordered up by the chief commander to menace or attack the enemy's flanks.

From the specimens of discipline exhibited by irregular cavalry, one would hardly believe that an extended line could charge on full gallop, with such precision, "that one horse's head should not be a foot before another"—yet the Prussian cavalry under Frederick 3d, says the Count Algarotti, "executed this, and the line was so exactly straight, that Euclid himself could not have found fault with it."* This cavalry is said to have gained the extraordinary battle of Rosbach, in Germany, by one brisk charge.

A great variety of instances might be cited from history, to prove that well disciplined and experienced cavalry, is capable not only of turning the flanks, but of breaking the line of veteran infantry by a direct charge. Even raw cavalry have done this. "The laurels of Exdorff, in Germany, are still the glory of the 15th regiment of English light dragoons." In that action this regiment, (which then for the first time ap-

* Letter on the military exercises of the Prussians in time of peace.
PREFACE.

peard in the field,) made five attacks on the infantry, and, to the astonishment of every one, broke through their line at every charge. But these exploits were not achieved without a considerable loss of men and horses.

In the recent campaigns in Europe, some of the most brilliant victories have been won by the daring attacks of cavalry. At the celebrated battle of Marengo, the French cavalry made twelve successive charges; in one of which, a brigade of heavy cavalry attacked with such impetuosity and effect as to capture 6000 grenadiers, with the Austrian General Zack. At Austerlitz and Elau, the French cavalry charged in columns, with great success. But this mode of attack, although it may be formidable, must necessarily be attended with great loss when under the fire of artillery, and ought not to be resorted to but in extreme cases.

Since the movement by ranks of threes has been introduced into cavalry manoeuvres, their tactics have become assimilated to those of infantry; and they now execute with facility, any movement of those troops, whether in lines or columns; and they are found to be of the utmost importance in an engagement, particularly where the ground is level and open, and the enemy form in extended lines without a strong cover for their flanks.

October 21, 1813.

ERRATA.

Page 26, introduction, line 14 from bottom, for a read and—p. 32, l. 12, for with mere read with a mere—p. 97, l. 11 from bottom, for acrs read arcs—p. 151, l. 9 from bottom, for of the division, read of their right divisions—p. 163, l. 10, for division read divisions—p. 193, l. 18, for columns read column—p. 198, l. 15 from bottom, for ingenuous read ingenious—p. 199, l. 14, after Halt! add Wheel up!—same page, l. 15 from bottom, for stands read stand—p. 202, l. 8, for then read thus—same p. l. 4 from bottom, for almost read about—p. 210, l. 5 from bottom, for captains read captain.

Several small errors, which the reader will readily correct, are not noted.
## CONTENTS

**Sect.**

1. **INTRODUCTION,**  
   Page. 13
2. Of Horses and Equipments, 21
3. Of the Recruits' Arms and Equipments, 26
4. Of the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers, 29
5. Catalogue of Military Books, 39

**PART I.**

---

**OF THE DRILL,**  
**FOOT DRILL,** ib.
1. Position on Foot, 44
2. The Facings, ib.
3. Dressings, 45
4. Of the Various Steps, 46
5. The March to the Front, ib.
6. File Marching, 47
7. Mounted Drill, 46
8. Accoutring the Horse, ib.
9. Mounting, 49
10. Seat on Horseback, 50
11. Dismounting, 51
12. Forming and Dressing in Ranks, 52
13. Turning, or Facing, ib.
14. Passing, 53
15. Reining back, ib.
16. The different Paces, 54
17. Advance and change of Pace, ib.
18. The Riding Square and Circle, 56
19. Leaping, 58
20. General instructions for the management of the Horses, 59
21. To accustom Horses to Fire Arms, &c. 61
22. Sabre Exercise, 63
23. Drawing, returning and executing the Cuts, 64
24. Modes of protecting the Man and Horse, 69
25. Modes of giving Point, parrying and cutting against Infantry, 71
26. Sword Exercise on Horseback, 73
27. Exercise by Flugelmen, 78
29. Exercise on a Right Line, in Speed, 79
30. Charging at the Ring, ib.
31. Application of the Edge, 80
32. Attack and Defence, 81
33. Attack and Defence in Pursuit, 82
CONTENTS.

Sect. Page.
32. Exercise of the Pistol, 83
33. Firing with Sword Drawn, 85
THE FILINGS, 86
34. Filing from Right and Left to Front, ib.
35. Filing from Centre to Front, ib.
36. Filing from Right and Left to Rear, ib.
37. Filing to the Rear from the Centre, 87
38. Filing to a Flank in open Files, ib.
39. Movements in open File—turn and change of Direction, 88
40. Inclining, 89
OF WHEELING, 90
41. Wheeling on a halted Pivot, ib.
42. Wheeling on a moveable Pivot, 92
43. Wheeling on a halted Pivot when on the march, ib.
44. Wheeling in two Ranks, ib.
MOVEMENTS BY RANKS OF THREEES, 93
45. Wheeling and marching to the Flank, by Threees, 94
46. Movements to the Rear by Threees, 95
EXPLANATIONS, PREPARATORY TO THE movements in Troop and Squadron, ib.
47. Formation and Deployment, ib.
48. Files and Ranks, 96
49. Distance of Files, ib.
50. Filing and Ranking off, ib.
51. Wheel up, 97
52. Pivots and Reverse Flanks in Column, ib.
53. The Alignement, Points of Formation & Appui, ib.
54. Serrefile, 100
55. The Column, ib.
56. Echelon, ib.
57. Telling off, 102
58. The Words of Command, ib.
59. Signals, 104
60. Standards or Colours, ib.
61. Dressing, 105
62. Change of Position, 106
63. Change of Front, 108

PART II:
FORMATION, EXERCISE AND MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP, ib.
1. Organization of the Troop, ib.
2. Parade and Formation of the Troop, 109
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Opening Ranks and Files for Exercise</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Dismounting and Linking, The Wheelings</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Wheeling by Divisions</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Wheel to the Left into Line</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Wheeling by Sub-Divisions</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Wheeling to the Left into Line</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Commands for Wheeling other portions of the Circle</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Wheeling in succession, on a moveable Pivot</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Inclining in Column, or single Division</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. To take Ground to the Flank and Front by Echelon</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Countermarch by Files and change of Front on the Centre</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Filings</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Filing to the Front</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Filing to the Rear</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Filing to Front in single File</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Ranking off to the Front</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Movements by Threes</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Charging and retreating by Division and Line</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Skirmishing</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Dispersing, Attacking in Pell Mell &amp; Rallying</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Extending and closing Files</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Firings</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Firing by Ranks standing</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Firing by Ranks advancing</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Firing in Rank entire, advance and Charge</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Attack in double Potence</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Formation of Column of Sub-Divisions by advancing from a Flank, with the methods of Deploying</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Closing an open Column</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Opening a close Column</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Countermarch in open Column, from a Defile</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Increasing and Diminishing Front on the March</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echelon Movements</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. Direct Echelon to the Front</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. Movement in Echelon to the Rear</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. Echelon change of Position to an Oblique Alignement Advanced</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

36. Passage of Obstacles, 141
37. Passage of Defiles, ib.
33. Formation of a Troop in Rank entire, 142

PART III.

FORMATION, EXERCISE AND MOVEMENTS
OF THE SQUADRON AND REGIMENT, 143
2. Organization and Formation of the Regiment, 144
3. Parade Exercise,
   MANŒUVRES, 148
4. Wheeling by Half Squadrons, 149
5. Wheeling by Divisions, 150
6. Wheeling by Sub-Divisions, 151

FORMATION AND DEPLOYMENT OF COLUMNS, ib.
7. Close Column on the Right, the Right in Front, 153
8. Close Column on the Left, the Left in Front, 154
9. Close Column on a Central Division, Right in Front, ib.
10. Close Column on the Right, the Left in Front, 156.
11. Deployment of a Column to the Right, having the Right in Front, ib.
12. Open Column on the Right, the Right in Front, 157
13. Open Column formed on the Right, on the March, by Inclining, 159
14. Double Column formed on the Centre, by Inclining,
   MOVEMENTS IN COLUMN, 160
15. Direct March of a Column, ib.
16. Open Column, Right in Front, to March on an Alignement, ib.
17. Flank March of Column, 162
18. Column changing the direction of its March, 163.
20. Rear of the Column brought to the Front; ib.
21. Change of Position in Column, by a Flank March of Divisions, 164
22. Increasing and Diminishing the Front of a Column on the March, 165
23. Column Filing from a Flank and Forming up, ib.
24. Column Marching Right in Front, forms Line on Reverse Flank, 166
25. Open Column forms the Oblong Square, 167
CONTENTS.

26. Echelleon Change of Position to a Parallel Alignment in Front, ib.
27. Echelleon Change of Position to a Parallel Alignment in Front, on a Central Division, 169.
28. Echelleon Change of Position on the Right, the Left brought forward, ib.
29. Echelleon Change of Position on the Left, the Right thrown back, 170.
30. Quarter Conversion on the Right, by open Column, 171
31. Quarter Conversion on the Left, by open Column of Divisions, ib.
32. Quarter Conversion on the Left, the Right thrown back, 172.
33. Change of Position in Column, to a Parallel Alignment in the Rear, ib.
34. Change of Position to the Rear, by the Flank March of Divisions, by Threes, 173
CHANGES OF FRONT,
35. Change of Front, by Countermarch in open Column of Divisions, from Right, ib.
36. Change of Front on the Centre, by operation of open Column, 175
MOVEMENTS IN LINE,
37. Advance in Line, 177
38. The Regiment takes ground to the Right and Front, by an Incline in Echelleon, ib.
39. Passage of Defiles; 178
40. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Divisions, from the Centre, ib.
41. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Files from the Centre, 179
42. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Threes, from the Centre, 180
43. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Threes, from a Flank, ib.
44. Passage of a Defile in the Rear, by Threes, 181
45. Passage of Obstacles, 182
MOVEMENTS IN ATTACK AND DEFENCE,
46. Attack in Line to the Front, 186
47. The Regiment retires in Line, ib.
43. Attack in Echelleon of Half Squadrons to the Front, 187
CONTENTS.

49. The Regiment retires in Echelon, from the Left, and forms Oblique Line to the Left, 188
50. Attack by the two Centre Divisions; the remaining Divisions supporting in Echelon, ib.
51. The Regiment retires in Column of Fours, from the Flanks of Squadrons, 189
52. Attack to the Front and Pursuit from the Flanks, 190
53. Skirmishing, ib.
54. Passage of a Line of Infantry by Threes from the Centre, and Charge to the Front, 191
55. Passage of a Line of Infantry by Filing from the Right of Half Squadrons, 192
56. Attack of Infantry, part of the Line in Column, ib.
57. Attack in double Column, from the Centre, upon a Line of Infantry whose Wings are covered, 194
58. The Regiment advancing to Attack the Enemy's Right is Obstructed, takes ground to the Right and Charges the Left Flank, 195
60. Attack in Front and Flank in single Potence, 196
61. Regiment Marching Right in Front by Files, forms two Lines for a Front attack, 197
62. The Regiment in Line, the Front Rank attacks with Pistol, the Rear supports with Swords, 198
63. Attack by Right Squadron, the Left supports in Columns, 199
64. The Regiment retires in two Lines, ib.
65. Attack to the Front, in Line of Impression, 200
66. Regiment retires in the Chequered Retreat of Divisions, 201
67. Retreat of the Line by the Wheel of Divisions, 202
68. Trumpet and Bugle Soundings, 203
Sounds for exercise and movement, ib.
69. General Review, 204
1. Opening the Ranks and receiving the General, ib.
2. Marching past, 207
70. Inspecting Review, 210
CONTENTS.

PART IV.

DUTY OF CAVALRY IN FIELD.

1. Encampment of a Regiment in the Field, 212
2. Camp Guards, 216
3. Out Post and Picket Guards, 218
4. Relief of Guards and Vedettes, 220
5. General Instructions for Pickets, 222
6. Of Patrols and Reconnoitring Parties, 229
7. Of the Rounds, 232
8. Method of going the Grand Rounds, 233
9. Trumpet Soundings for Duty in Camp, 234
   1. Sounds previous to a march, ib.
   2. Duty soundings, ib.
10. Roll Callings, 236
11. Morning Inspection, 237
12. Regulations for the Police of the Camp, 238
13. Regulation for the care of the Horses, and Foraging Duties, 243
14. Method of entering and pitching a Camp, 245
15. Village Camp, 246
16. Decampment and March of an Army, 249

---

Morning Report of Capt. 's Troop.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific heads</th>
<th>present fit for duty</th>
<th>sick or lame</th>
<th>on command</th>
<th>on furlough</th>
<th>recruiting</th>
<th>absent without leave</th>
<th>total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeants</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpeters</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rank and File.</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dismounted men</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Date.) Captain.
INTRODUCTION.

CAVALRY have long been considered an important arm in European warfare, and in open countries, and particularly in those that are level, it is acknowledged that war cannot be successfully prosecuted, without a considerable proportion of this species of troops.

The great service rendered in our revolutionary war by the corps under the gallant commanders Lee, Washington, White, Sheldon, Moylan and others, proves incontestably the utility of cavalry in American warfare; but what proportion they should bear to the infantry is not precisely determined.* The number in an army depends much on the nature of the country which is the seat of war, and the species of force employed by the enemy. If they have a numerous cavalry, they can move with rapidity in every direction, and seize on any opportunity that presents for gaining an advantage, which cannot be counteracted without a proportionate number.

In countries that are open and level, the cavalry should be more numerous than in those that are covered and mountainous, and consequently, in the southern and middle states, they should bear a greater proportion to the infantry, than in the northern part of the union.

Among the Alleghany mountains, cavalry will never be extensively useful, nor will they be necessary in our western country till it is much more opened than at present. Small corps only, for reconnoitering and transmitting intelligence, can be advantageously employed. Where extensive prairies prevail, as in some parts of Louisiana, and consequently where forage may be procured, and cavalry can act, they may be increased, and indeed considerable numbers may be indispensably neces-

*By the act of Congress, of May 1792, establishing a uniform militia, the cavalry and artillery are not to exceed one eleventh part of the infantry.
sary; but in the woods numbers are of little worth; there the principal part of our forces should consist of hardy, active corps of riflemen and light infantry, well disciplined to the tactics necessary in the woods, and habituated to the strictest subordination and implicit obedience to the commands of their officers. A suitable force of this kind, and a chain of well fortified posts on the frontiers would command success, and insure us a permanent peace with our wild neighbors of the west.

Cavalry are employed in an open country on distant advanced posts, to watch the movements of the enemy, to harass them on their march, and seize on all opportunities of distressing them, by cutting off their convoys and supplies; surprising their out posts and guards, and destroying their magazines, and munitions of war. They are also to patrol and reconnoitre the vicinity of their own army, in order to discover the enemy's parties that may approach, and to detect deserters and marauders. In an engagement they are to cover and support the infantry—menace the enemy's flanks, and when any favorable emergency presents, to charge in a compact body upon the enemy's lines, infantry or cavalry, or in loose and scattered order when they are broken and retreating in confusion.

In European armies cavalry have been designated by the various names of heavy and light dragoons, gendarmerie, light horse, hussars, cuirassiers, ulans and carabiniers; and the duties assigned to these corps have been somewhat variant.

Dragoons are cavalry that serve on horseback, or on foot, as circumstances require. The heavy dragoons are furnished with stout horses, and armed with fusées, bayonets, pistols and sabres, and they are employed in close attack upon the enemy's lines in general engagements. Light dragoons are armed like the heavy dragoons, but mounted on lighter and swifter horses, and their duty differs in no respect from that of light horse, excepting in sometimes dismounting and attacking on foot.

The gendarmerie were a heavy cavalry, formerly much used in the French armies. The term originally signified men in complete armour. The horses were shielded with a breast plate, head-piece, and covers for the sides; the men wore cuirasses, a defensive armour made of iron plates, well hardened, covering the body both before and behind. This cavalry were formidable in a close charge, but their heavy armour
INTRODUCTION.

destroyed, in some degree, that agility which constitutes one of the essential properties of cavalry. Under the appellation of gen d'armes, cavalry are now extensively employed by the French government; their duty is principally to assist the police officers and enforce the conscription laws; but they are not covered with so heavy armour as formerly.

Light-horse are cavalry lightly armed and accoutred and furnished with horses lighter than those of the heavy dragoons; they formerly carried carabines, strapped to the shoulders, but this is now generally laid aside, and their only arms are pistols and sabres. They are employed on desultory service, as well as in close charges with the sabre.

Hussars are the national cavalry of Hungary and Croatia, in Europe. They are lightly accoutred, and armed with sabres, carabines and pistols—are remarkable for their desultory attacks, in which they lay themselves flat on their horses' necks, which secures them in some degree from the enemy's fire, and when within pistol shot, they raise themselves, and commence the fight with such vivacity, on every side, that unless accustomed to their attacks it is difficult even for regular troops to resist them. Their horses are of a middling size, possess great speed, and the riders are excellent horsemen; they leap fences and ditches, and swim rivers, with surprising facility, and it is difficult for other cavalry to come up with them, on a retreat. As they seldom encamp in tents, but lie in the woods, out-houses, or in detached villages, in front of the army, they are not incumbered with camp equipage. Under the name of hussars, this kind of cavalry have been introduced into most of the armies of Europe, and they are found to be excellent in the petite guerre.

Cuirassiers are a heavy cavalry armed with cuirasses, as described under gendarmerie; they are not extensively employed in modern wars; their armour is found but a poor defence against fire arms, and besides is so unwieldy that it embarrasses the exertions of the men, retards the movements of the horses, and renders their attacks less efficient.

The ulans or bulans are light cavalry resembling in some degree the hussars, but better armed, accoutred, and mounted.

† In Hungarian, huzsar implies twentieth, because twenty peasants are obliged to furnish one horseman to the cavalry.—Busch. iii. 56.—quoted in Pinkerton's Geography, i. 266.
on stronger and swifter horses. The word is of doubtful etymology: a certain discription of militia among modern Tartars are called ublans. Great use has been made of the ulans in the Polish armies in recent wars. Their arms are a spear or lance, about five or six feet long, at the top of which hangs a small silk streamer, that serves to frighten the horses of the enemy, by its fluttering noise. The lance is suspended on the right side, by means of a belt that is worn across the shoulder, or by a small leather thong which goes round the right arm, the end of the lance resting in a kind of stay, attached to the stirrup; the other arms are a brace of pistols and sabre which hang to the waist belt.

In 1743, Marshal Saxe raised a regiment of ulans which was attached to the French army. Their uniform consisted of a green coat, or cloak, green breeches, Hungarian half boots, a pinch-beck helmet, with a turban twisted round it of Russian leather; the mane of the helmet consisted of horse hair, coloured according to the facings of the regiment; the lance was nine feet long, with a floating streamer at top, and a sabre and pistol were hung at the waist belt.

The Duke de Lauzun's legion cavalry, attached to the army of Count Rochambeau, which served in America in our last war, were armed in the ulan manner; and when the Count Pulaski commanded the cavalry of our army, in the same war, he armed part of them with the ulan spear, but in the place of the silk streamer he substituted the tails of foxes; these were found to frighten the horses, on which a charge was made, more effectually than the silk streamer, and it was found extremely difficult to retain horses in the ranks when charged by cavalry thus armed.

Carabiniers are light cavalry armed with carabines, longer than those of the other cavalry. They are sometimes dismounted to perform on foot like dragoons.

Chasseurs a cheval, that is hunters on horseback, are a kind of mounted infantry, used in skirmishing and flanking.

Cavalry under various other names are employed in European armies, such as Cozacks, Pandours, Croats, &c.; but their arms, horses and equipments are so nearly like some that have been described, that a particular notice of the whole is deemed unnecessary.

The Cozaks, who have made so conspicuous a figure in the late campaign against Bonaparte, justly claim a particular des-
INTRODUCTION.

erection. They are a half civilized people of Russia, forming several nations, having nearly the same manners and habits. Those of the Ukraine and the River Don are the most advanced in civilization. Their features are broad and flat, with a pair of small fiery and piercing eyes—rather of a small stature, very robust, active and courageous; they are expert in the use of the lance and arrow, which they manage with astonishing dexterity, and extremely skillful in taming wild horses. They form an irregular cavalry in the Russian army and are a valuable appendage to regular troops.

The chief and most destructive weapon of the Cozaks, is a lance 10 or 12 feet long, suspended upon a sling from the waist. When they are upon the charge they let the lance down to a level with the stirrup, and after drawing it back with their right foot, to which the but end is fastened, they thrust it forward by the same foot, with such force and destructive aim, that it generally proves fatal to the enemy.

They are besides armed with a musket, a brace of pistols stuck in their girdle, and a sabre. On the right side is suspended a small bag containing the ammunition, and a short whip is fastened to their right wrist, and they use no spurs.

The horses are diminutive and have a niggardly appearance, but are mettlesome, can with ease walk five miles an hour, and will dispute the race with the swiftest. A Cozak, it is said, will leap with his horse from the steepest bank into a deep and rapid river, will traverse dry and burning sands, or cross forests almost impervious and covered with snow. By the stars, the wind, and an union of the most ingenious observations they will travel over countries unknown, and track some precursor that they are directed to pursue, with the assurance and the indefatigable ardor of the instinctive blood hound. Nothing can elude their activity, escape their penetration or surprise their vigilance. Irreparable disgrace would dishonor the Cozak whose negligence offered an advantage to the enemy—cowardice itself could not attach so fatal a stigma; and no instance of a surprise is on record.

The equipments of the horses are light; a snaffle—a halter of which the rein is always held in the hand, that it may instantly be attached, on dismounting, or the horse be led with facility. The saddle is a frame on which is bound a cushion stuffed with the Cozak's property. Their dress is equally simple; a blue jacket, with a white frog on the cuff or cape.
INTRODUCTION.

fastened with hooks; a pair of loose trowsers; a pair of short
boots, a black cap made of unborn lamb, from which depends
a red pandour sack, a plume on the side of the cap, or what
is more common, merely a cloth cap with a kind of sack hang-
ing behind, in which the provisions or other articles are stuffed
—and a white or black hair circassian short cloak.

From his earliest age the Cozak delights in the exercise on
horseback, and accustoming himself to bend under his horse
at full gallop, to manage his lance and practice every move-
ment and exercise, he becomes exceedingly expert in equita-
tion and dexterous in the use of his arms, and particularly his
favourite weapon the lance. Their food is as simple as their
dress; they will subsist on horse flesh which has scarcely been
warmed by the fire. They have a certain principle of rude
discipline, but do not attack in regular squadron, but in a
loose and scattered manner, and they never fear a competition,
in single combat. In pursuit they are terrible to a flying ene-
my, who can seldom rally with the Cozaks at their heels.*

This cavalry is excellent for scouring a country, for patrols,
stratagems and surprises. They examine the ground recently
traversed by an enemy with astonishing sagacity—tell with
surprising accuracy the number of horses that have passed, and
can perceive the movements of the enemy at an extraordinary
distance, and by applying the ear to the ground distinguish far
off the match of cavalry. They are accustomed to hunger,
thirst and every kind of fatigue—are very expert in procuring
forage for their horses, which will subsist where other cavalry
would perish.

The Cozak maintains his warlike character, and unites with
the most enthusiastic admiration of his country, and disposition

* In the late campaign in Poland and Russia, the Cozaks
have attacked the regular cavalry of the French, in the open
field, and in vain has discipline endeavoured to present an im-
pediment to the protruding pikes. Sir Robert Wilson’s cam-
paign in Poland, from which many particulars in our account
of the Cozaks have been drawn, says, that at the battle of
Elau, when the French Cuirassiers made their desperate
charge on the Russian centre and passed through an interval,
the Cozaks instantly bore down on them, speared them, unhorsed
them, and in a few moments 530 Cozaks reappeared
in the field equipped with the spoils of the slain.
to profit of its enjoyments, the ambition of martial service, and an errant spirit of adventerous and foreign enterprize, and their military virtues are splendid.

The following account of the Mamalukes, the Turkish cavalry of Egypt, is given by a French officer, who served under Bonaparte in his campaign in that country.

"The Mamalukes are exercised from their infancy in the military art; they acquire an extraordinary degree of dexterity in the management of their horses, in shooting their carabines and pistols, in throwing the lance and wielding the sabre. Every Mamaluke has two, three, and sometimes four servants, who follow him on foot wherever he goes, nay even in the field. The arms are two carabines, carried by his servants; these are never fired but once. Two pair of pistols stuck in his girdle; eight lances in a kind of quiver, which he throws with admirable dexterity, and an iron headed mace. When all these are discharged, he comes to his last resource, his two sabres: putting then his bridle between his teeth, he takes one of them in each hand and rushes full speed upon the foe, cutting and slashing to the right and left. Woe be to those who cannot parry his blows!—for some of them have been known to cleave a man down the middle, and at exercise to sever at a blow, a head of wet cotton."

This cavalry in single attacks, are no doubt formidable; but it is impossible, with such a load of arms, that they should be able to cope with light cavalry, well instructed in the close movements of the line and column: and indeed experience has taught that they are inferior to the cavalry of Europe with which they have recently contended; they have been beaten in every engagement with equal, if not inferior numbers.*

Cavalry are now employed by some of our American Indians. The Appashees, according to Major Pike, are a nation of these people, bordering on the Spanish settlements of New Mexico. They have a considerable body of cavalry, armed with bows and arrows, a lance, and a shield for defence. The bow forms two semi-circles with a shoulder in the middle; the back is entirely covered with sinews of animals, which are

---

*M. Volney represents this cavalry as a mob—their march a riot—their battles duels, and their wars robbery and plunder. See travels in Egypt and Syria, i. 178.
laid on so nicely, by some glutinous substance, as to be almost imperceptible; this gives a great elasticity to the weapon. — The arrow is more than three feet and a half long; the point of iron, bone or stone, and so constructed, that when the arrow enters the body, and is again drawn out, the point remains in the wound. With the bow they shoot with such force as to go through the body of a man at the distance of 100 yards: and an officer informed our traveller, that in an engagement, one of these arrows, striking his shield, dismounted him in a moment. The lance is 15 feet in length, and with this they charge, holding both hands over their heads, and managing their horses principally with their knees, and with surprising dexterity. They are considered an overmatch for the Spanish cavalry, single handed, but are not able to stand the charge of a body disciplined to the tactics of the squadron.†

In modern armies cavalry have been considerably simplified; the arms, horses and equipments are more uniform, and the duty formerly assigned to different kinds of cavalry is assimilated. Indeed it is justly questioned whether any real benefit ever resulted from various species of these troops, giving them different kind of arms, and assigning various duties to different corps. The general term cavalry, seems to be the

† The following anecdote will show with what certainty this cavalry direct the lance in single combat.

A party of Spanish and Appachee cavalry having approached near each other, the Appachee chief, mounted on a remarkably fine charger, rode forward and challenged the Spanish commander to single combat. One of the dragoons, a corporal, begged permission to meet the Indian, which, after some hesitation on the part of the officer, was granted. The chief had turned his horse to join his party, but seeing his enemy advancing, turned, gave a shout and met the Spaniard full speed; the latter with his sabre, attempted to parry the lance of his antagonist, but not throwing it sufficiently up, it pierced through his neck and killed the Spaniard instantly; the victor, giving a shout, joined his party. This so enraged the Spaniards that they charged the Indians with their whole force and put them to flight, and thereby demonstrated what is many times the case, that although they were inferior in single combat, they were not so in a combined movement.
Most appropriate for all troops serving on horseback; excepting for horse artillery, which is a distinct kind of cavalry. The term mounted riflemen, used to designate riflemen who perform their marches on horseback, may be proper to distinguish them from other horse troops, since they do not engage while mounted, and their manner of attack has no affinity to that of cavalry. The term horse riflemen, however, appears to be a more appropriate designation.

The horse artillery, now so extensively employed, is a species of cavalry; the men are generally mounted on horses, and armed with sabres, but their duty is essentially different from that of cavalry: It consists principally in transporting their heavy field pieces,* with rapidity to any given point of attack, and in manoeuvring them in action. The men ought, however, to be taught the use of the sabre on horseback, and in the manner of attacking in squadron, that they may defend their field pieces when closely pursued by the enemy.

The excellency of cavalry consists very much in the rapidity, regularity, and promptitude of its movements; and consequently in the strength, activity and soundness of the men and horses: It is necessary then that these be carefully selected, well disciplined and inured to hardships, under brave, hardy and skilful officers.

The preceding history and remarks, are inserted for the purpose of giving the young cavalry officer some idea of the different species of these troops, and the various kind of arms that have been used by different nations.

As a preliminary to the drill, it is proposed in the remaining part of this introduction to treat of the materials which are supposed to constitute cavalry corps, best adapted for American warfare.

1. Of Horses and their Equipments.

Horses for cavalry should be from fourteen and a half to fifteen hands high, well made, vigorous, bold, active and docile. None but geldings, and those that are good trotters.

*The French horse artillery make use of 8-pounders and 6 inch howitzers. The English of light 12 and 6 pounders, and 5 1-2 inch howitzers. The Austrian and Prussian of 6 pounders and 5 1-2 inch howitzers.

Adye's Pocket Gunner, p. 10.
should be selected, nor should they be mounted for actual service, till five or six years old. The colors most suitable are the black and bay; but none should be rejected, where those colors cannot be procured, excepting the white, which is too conspicuous, especially for reconnoitering and secret expeditions. Restive and ungovernable horses, if advanced in years, are by no means to be admitted into the service, for it is very difficult to bring them to that degree of suppleness necessary to fit them for the field.

The indications of a good cavalry horse are the following: The head should be lean and muscular, rather slender and not long; the ears small, erect, thin and well placed on the top of the head; the forehead narrow and a little convex; the nose arched, the nostrils open and thin; eyes clear and full of expression, rather large than small and projecting even with, or a little above the surrounding parts; the mouth and lips of a middling size, cheeks thin and wide, and between the jaws a good space. The neck should be small at the juncture with the head, and thence grow deeper to the breast; the crest of the neck, at the withers, should rise nearly in a right line, and as it approaches the head, bend a little down, forming an easy curve, but the under side should form a right line, nearly, from the breast to the lower jaw, and the mane should be thin and composed of fine long hair. The shoulders should be rather long; the withers raised and sharp; the chest broad, prominent and muscular; the back smooth and equal, forming a small convexity; the flanks full and short; the croup round and full; the haunches plump and rather swelling; the thighs should be fleshy, sinewy and a little swelling outward; the knees lean, round, close knit and well proportioned; the shanks sharp before, flat on the sides and very lean; the pastern lean, strong, straight and rather short, and the hair of the fetlock thin. The hoof should be black or dark brown, smooth and sound; the instep high, quarters round, heels broad and somewhat raised; the frog small and the sole concave and of due thickness.

A horse of the common size should have the distance of five or six inches between his fore thighs; if he is thin breast-ed and his legs almost touch, he is of little worth. The body should be duly proportioned to the other parts, neither long, short nor saddle backed: it should be home ribbed, but the ribs must not approach the haunches so close as to impede the action of the hind parts.
INTRODUCTION.

The temper of a horse may be known by his eyes and ears: if he is vicious he will frequently lay the latter close to his neck, roll up his eyes, shewing the white part, and often attempt to bite those around him, particularly strangers, and he generally stands in a posture of defence.

When a horse is standing, he should support himself on all fours, bearing equally on each foot, and forming with them a right angled parallelogram, his feet being at the angles, his forelegs nearly perpendicular; the head drawn a little in, and he should assume a bold but graceful attitude. When he walks or trots he should carry his fore legs perpendicularly, or without turning in or out, and he must not raise them too high; the hind feet should exactly replace the fore feet—if they reach further he is apt to strike and cut his fore heels, or overreach, which is a bad fault: If he goes wider with his hind than with his fore legs it is hardly deemed a defect. A good cavalry horse steps about three feet in the walk, and four in the trot; he will walk about four miles in an hour, which at three feet to the step will make about 120 steps in a minute; on an easy gallop he will pass over about 400 yards in a minute. An ordinary racer will run a mile in two minutes; but horses are found with much greater speed.* It is however questionable whether the swiftest horses are the best for cavalry, that is to act in considerable bodies and to manoeuvre in lines. The usual rate of marching for a body of cavalry is 18 miles in six hours, but they may be pushed on to 30 or 36 miles in the same time; but this speed would soon tire ordinary horses and render them unfit for service.†

* The famous English horse Childers has been known to run the longest course at New-Market, which is 7420 yards, equal to 4 miles 380 yards, in seven and a half minutes, which is at the rate of more than 49 feet in a second and 2967 in a minute: and it is supposed this racer covered at every bound a space of ground about 24 feet in length. This horse is said to have been the swiftest racer ever known—no one having been found to equal him, and it is remarkable that his colts have proved very deficient in speed.

† The author of a pamphlet entitled "The Resources of Russia, &c." says that a detachment of Russian Cavalry, in the late campaign, marched from Volhynia to the Dwina, a distance of 500 miles in five days. Judging from the strength
Horses are seldom found with all the qualities that have been mentioned; but if they do not possess a considerable proportion they are seldom fit for cavalry; those are to be selected that combine the greatest number.

Equipments.

The equipments for the horses should be made with great care, and as light as is consistent with the requisite strength. The saddle should be from 20 to 22 inches in length; the pad well stuffed, soft and so wide as to descend almost as low as the skirts; the frame must be well strengthened with iron, otherwise it is very apt to be fractured, and when this happens on a march, the horse gets injured and sometimes rendered unfit for service for some time. The saddle should rest as near the back of the horse as possible, without injuring the chine, or the withers; and when the latter are high the pommel must rise in proportion; and, if the back be very concave, or saddle-backed, the frame should be more curved to correspond with the back. By such construction the rider will sit nearer the back of the horse, and he will be more secure in his seat, and less burdensome to his horse. The cantle should be so high as to prevent the rider from sliding back out of the saddle; but it must not be too high, as is frequently the case; the skirts should extend three or four inches below the top of the rider's boots; the girths and surcingle at least three inches in width, and strong. Great attention must be paid to the stirrups, for on their strength depends a great measure the safety of the rider. The straps should be made of the best leather; the irons ought to be so large that the feet may have full room, and be readily disengaged should the rider be thrown out of the seat. A light breast plate of metal attach-

of our horses this would appear incredible. But it is admitted that the Russian cavalry is most excellently mounted, that their horses are the most hardy of any on the continent, and that they will bear fatigue and deprivation of forage much beyond other cavalry. Sir Robert Wilson, in his "Brief remarks on the composition of the Russian army," says that after Beningzea's retreat from Poland, in 1807, the Russian cavalry continued in the field three months during the extremest winter, and subsisted wholly on the old thatch stripped from the roofs of the cottages of the peasants.
ed to the breast girth is a good protection for the horse, against the bayonet, and should not be omitted. The hous-
ing or saddle cloth may be of a moderate size, and in hot weather this article may be dispensed with; indeed this is to be considered rather as an ornament than a necessary appen-
dage, especially if the men are clad in short coats, which are not liable to be soiled by sweat and dust from the horse. To the hind part of the saddle should be attached a mail-pillion of a moderate size to support the valise and prevent it from injuring the horse's back.

The best bridle for cavalry is that with a plain strong curb, with two pair of reins. The bridoon bit, sometimes used with the curb, is superfluous, and answers no valuable purpose; it fills the horse's mouth and embarrasses him in his move-
ments. The bit should be full in the mouth where it joins the bars; most of them are made too small and long; they bend over the jaws working like pincers, cut the horse's mouth and render him restive and apt to throw up his head. Upon the snaffle rein a loop should be fitted to slide easily up and down; the curb rein need not be long; the extent from the bit to the hand, when holding the snaffle rein at proper length, is sufficient. The front piece and top of the head-
stall should be covered with metallic plates to defend the horse's head against the sabre.*

The halter, should be made of good pliable leather, and well suited to the horse's head; and when he is bridled, the longe must be nearly folded up and fastened close under the jaws.

The holsters are to be as near the form of the pistols as con-
venience will permit, made of firm thick leather, impervious to water, and covered with bear skin caps, or others that will effectually prevent water or snow from entering.

Each horseman must be furnished with a valise, the length equal to the thickness of the horse's body, and sufficiently capacious to hold his clothing and other necessary articles. It

* The Russian cavalry have an improvement in the bridle. The bit is unfastened on one side, and hung up to the cheek of the bridle or halter; but so that it may be loosened and re- placed with facility. This supersedes the necessity of un-
bridling to feed the horse, and is very convenient on advanced pickets.
should be divided into three apartments, lengthwise; two of which will hold his clothing, the other his comb, brushes, &c. A double cover to the valise, the outer one of painted canvass, the inner of leather, and strapped down, will completely secure the articles enclosed from wet and snow. Each man should also be provided with a spare horse shoe and nails prepared for setting, should his horse lose a shoe on the march—these may be carried in the valise.

For the purpose of conveying forage on horseback, a canvass sack, seven or eight feet in circumference, and four or five in depth is sometimes provided for each man. This being filled with hay or other forage, and placed behind the rider, resting upon the horse, and steadied by slings attached to the canvass, through which the arms pass, is transported to camp, or the place of deposit with safety.

When the tents are not sufficient to hold the horse equipments, a painted canvass, called a water deck, should be provided. The canvass is sufficiently large to cover the saddle and equipments, over which it is spread, and fastened down by small wooden pins, to prevent injury from storms. The deck is also used to cover the horse and equipments, in wet weather, as well when the rider is mounted, as dismounted.

A fatigue frock, to throw over the dress, when attending the horses, and on many other occasions, is very necessary for preserving cleanliness. Each horseman is sometimes provided with a leather thong, or strap, to be used in cases of dismounting a linking; but this is deemed unnecessary, for the bridle reins will answer all the purposes of the thong.

2. Of the Recruits, Arms and Equipments.

Recruits for cavalry should be active, strong and hardy, from five feet six to five feet eight inches high, with straight limbs, and every way well made, and not corpulent. To these qualifications must be added, youth, temperance, docility of disposition, adroitness in the exercise and management of their horses, and patience under every vicissitude of fortune. In the choice of recruits a preference should be given to young men, who have been habituated to the care and management of horses, and have acquired an attachment for this noble animal. If hardened by the changes and inclemency of the seasons, and brought up without the delicacies of the
table, they will the better sustain the hardships of the camp.

The most common mode of arming cavalry is with sabres and pistols. The sabre has a stirrup hilt, and a scimitar blade of a considerable curvature; it should have weight, be of the best metal, and a full yard in length: as this is the weapon most to be depended upon, it cannot be too well chosen. Many a brave fellow has been lost, by fracturing his sabre, when on the point of vanquishing his antagonist.†

There has been some diversity of opinion among officers, respecting the proper construction of the sword. Some recommend the long straight two edged one; others, that with three edges, as best for giving point, which they say, is the most efficacious mode of using the sword; but most officers agree that the scimitar blade is preferable to the straight sword, as it may be used either for cutting or thrusting, and this is now generally adopted in the cavalry.

A small thong, or sword knot, made of pliable leather, capable of shaping itself to the wrist, should be attached to the hilt, through which the right hand is thrust when the sword

†Much attention has recently been given by the British, in the manufacture of sabres for the cavalry. Previous to the year 1795, every regiment was at liberty to order its own swords, without reference to any standard, or proof of their goodness. Since that period a method of constructing and proving of swords has been adopted, and established by the board of ordnance, which is pronounced to be effectual, simple, and calculated to answer the important purpose of an unerring system. The regulation light cavalry sword, is 32 inches long, in the blade, and should spring one inch in every six, viz. 5 1/3 inches, which will take it down to about 27 inches. The process of proving is as follows: After being ground to a guage and weighed, to see that they are conformable to the scale, they are struck, back and edge, over a block of wood; this is called chopping. They are then struck sideways, on an even surface of wood; this is called slapping; and finally they are sprung to 27 inches. Every warranted sword undergoes this proof, which is considered equivalent to every hardship a sword undergoes in the field of battle. This is the system of a Mr. Osborn, who has supplied the English Board of ordnance with the principal part of their cavalry swords for several years past.
is to be drawn. This enables the soldier to recover his sword when forced from his grasp, or carelessly dropped.

The pistols; a brace of which is necessary for each man, should be from 12 to 15 inches in the barrel, the caliber the same with that of the muskets of the infantry, and furnished with good locks that will not miss fire.

The carabine, with which some corps are armed, is a light musket about 2½ feet long; it is slung on the right side, by a belt over the left shoulder, the muzzle resting in a kind of boot or socket. These arms are sometimes made with rifled barrels. Marshal Saxe armed one of the French regiments of ulans with this kind of carabine, and it was so constructed as to be loaded at the breech, by which the ramming, so difficult on horseback, was avoided, but it had many defects. A rifle of this species was invented by Major Ferguson, of the British army, who was killed at King's mountain in the war of our revolution. This was loaded at the breech, and without ramming or turning the muzzle from the enemy, and with such quickness of repetition as to fire seven times in a minute, and this was performed with ease, when prostrate on the ground and protected from the shot of the enemy by the smallest eminence.

In countries covered with woods, as some parts of the U. States, it is questionable whether the carabine ought wholly to be laid aside. It will often happen that cavalry will be compelled to dismount and attack infantry in a wood, or enclosure, inaccessible to horses: in this situation what can be done with swords and pistols? Most surely the cavalry will be obliged to retire and leave the field, even to inferior numbers. With rifled carabines, and especially those that receive the charge at the breech, cavalry would be formidable, and in broken and covered ground, by dismounting and attacking on foot, might dispute the palm with infantry, and render essential service on many occasions. The carabine is also necessary when cavalry encamp without infantry, either in a village or open field. In a close charge on horseback, this fire arm is of little use; here the sabre is the only weapon that will ensure victory.

The ulan spear has its advocates among officers; but it is generally supposed that its advantages, even in a close charge, the only case where it is useful, are more than counterbalanced by its disadvantages in all other situations, and it has not been generally adopted by the regular cavalry of Europe.
The cartridge boxes are to be strapped round the body by a waist-belt, the box in front; they should contain at least twelve rounds of cartridges, and be covered with leather impervious to water. In the box should be an apartment for three or four flints, an oil cloth and screwdriver.

Both officers and soldiers should be furnished with a good helmet, to defend the head, a cloak, pair of boots and spurs.

The clothing ought to be pliable and so fitted to the body and limbs as to admit of their free action. The short coat of blue, or green cloth, is the most proper; in the warm season the under dress may be thin and light. A chain epaulette, extending from the point of the shoulder to the cape of the coat, has been found an useful defence for the shoulders, against the sabre. The helmet, if of leather, is rendered more secure by winding round it, in various directions, small light chains; but care must be taken that the helmet is not rendered too heavy.

3. Of the Officers and Non Commissioned Officers.

A man may possess extraordinary natural talents and have received a good education, nay one that would fit him to shine most brilliantly in civil life, yet be wanting in many of the qualifications requisite for a good military officer. The art of war is complex and surrounded with difficulties: "there is no one that requires more genius and talents; more strength of mind as well as of body; that calls for greater self denial; for a stricter government over the passions; for closer application; for more ready obedience; or for a more rigid attention to general conduct." Hence to obtain any considerable degree of perfection, demands much study, joined to talents of a rare kind. The officer who can draw up his troops on parade and perform with facility the various manœuvres of a field day, according to a set of prescribed rules, may be esteemed by a superficial observer as an adept, but these acquirements are far short of the knowledge of an able officer.

Very few indeed are to expect to rise to perfection in military science and the grand operations of war, yet all officers should aspire to it, otherwise they may forever remain at a mortifying distance from those attainments which are absolutely necessary, and be treated with neglect, if not contempt, by those who are placed over them in command. It is not
enough that an officer fights courageously, he must fight scientifically, and know how to act on every emergency. Bonaparte, in his first campaign in Italy, sent one of his chiefs of Brigade to a garrison town, with this remark, “No man could have fought his troops with more intrepidity than you have, but you do not possess the genius and talents of a commander.”

On receiving a commission an officer must not suppose, as is too often the case, that a cockade, feather and epaulette, his book of tactics and a little expertness at exercise, will qualify him for command. So far from this, he must apply himself, with the greatest diligence, to the study of his profession, in all its branches; and this, he must recollect, extends not only to tactics but to the science of the engineer, and that of strategy, or the duty of generals commanding armies. The theory of the two former is acquired with much more facility in time of peace than in the hurry and noise of a camp.

When called into the service of his country, he is not to suppose that he is entering upon a life of pleasure and dissipation: on the contrary, he must expect to encounter great hardships, and self-denials, to relinquish many of the enjoyments and conveniences of domestic life, and must bear in mind, that he is pledged to the support of the honor, dignity and rights of his country.

Without entering into a minute detail of the qualifications of an officer, some of the most prominent only, and such as are deemed indispensable, whether these styled favours from nature, or such as are acquired by study and experience, will be noted.

The natural qualifications of an officer are “bravery, a robust constitution, a noble open countenance, a martial genius, fire to produce activity, phlegm to moderate his passions, and patience to support the toils and fatigues of war.”

“The military profession, says an able officer, is not designed for debauchees, nor for those who are too fond of pleasure: it requires, in a higher degree than any other, that strength and bodily vigor, which can bear with indifference, or even with cheerfulness, inconveniences and difficulties. A strong and robust constitution indicates strength and energy of mind; though this is a circumstance not sufficiently attended to in our military institutions.” Hence those designed for the military profession, must accustom themselves early to the inclemency and changes of the seasons; to hunger, thirst,
INTRODUCTION

fatigue, unusual toils, and extraordinary privations. The cavalry officer in particular, must learn to be content without the delicacies of the table, for he will, in his excursions, often be exposed to want; must partake of coarse and scanty meals, and frequently be wholly deprived of food. His lodging sometimes a cavern in the rocks or the earth; at others the spreading branches of a tree, or the woods affording the only shelter from the cold and howling storms of night. Such are the hardships common to the service of light troops, and the young officer must meet them with steady resolution, and without a murmur, persevere in the discharge of his duty, till he has hardened his body and mind to every fatigue.

"By arts like these,
Laconia nurs’d of old her hardy sons;
And Rome’s unconquer’d legions urg’d their ways.
Unhurt through every toil, in ev’ry clime."

To these masculine acquirements must be added the moral virtues, and those sciences immediately connected with military operations. There are necessary to qualify an officer to discharge his duty correctly and honorably, as well as to soften that ferocity, too natural to the soldier. It is not the design here to give directions concerning the moral conduct of officers; it is taken for granted, that none but gentlemen of correct habits, and such as possess urbanity of manners, accomplishments, justly considered the cardinal virtues of officers, will accept of appointments in the army or militia. We shall pass on to those branches of knowledge necessary to prepare the young officer, and particularly of the cavalry, for the discharge of his duty in all the various departments to which he may be called.

The tactics of the troops, in which an officer is to serve, claim his first attention. A thorough and mechanical knowledge of these is absolutely necessary, and he must be perfectly familiar with every movement; know the uses for which they are designed, and how to act on every occasion that occurs in the field of action. If he is deficient in these particulars, he will find himself greatly embarrassed when called upon to lead and conduct his troops; his men will have no confidence in him, nor will they act with spirit under his command; he
will be despised and abandoned by them in the hour of danger, and defeat and disgrace will be the consequence.

After having obtained a competent knowledge of his tactics, the officer will extend his researches to treatises on the petite guerre, and the general principles of war, as laid down by different authors, and if he finds them to differ on some points, they may not be the less valuable; they will lead him through the various subjects on which they treat, and teach him to invent methods of his own, one of the most important uses of this kind of study.

Let it be here remembered, that the officer is not to content himself with mere cursory perusal of his authors, and then lay them aside as of no further use. Little can be derived from this loose kind of study. The man of science, to fill up a leisure hour, may turn over books on tactics, fortification, and the general principles of war; the man of business, whose favorite object is the pursuit of wealth, may now and then appropriate a day to military exercises; but it is the soldier alone, he who has a taste for his profession, that digests and retains in his mind the rules and maxims inculcated, and, by practice and perseverance in his studies, enlarges his views of military subjects, and finally grasps the whole science of war.

Books on military subjects, both in English and French, have been greatly multiplied within a few years. Among them may be found judicious treatises on every branch of military duty, comprising the modern improvements.†

But "although skilful works on the art of war ought to be considered, by the young officer, as the oracles of his profession, he must nevertheless, guard his mind against that fatal persuasion, which might lull it into a belief, that nothing

† A copious and splendid work entitled the Complete Military Library, in 2 vol. 4to. illustrated with 100 plates, has recently been compiled for the officers of the English army. This is a kind of military Encyclopedia, and "unites to valuable papers on the most essential branches, and details of the art of war extracted from European writers, whatever is more particularly applicable to the English service, and besides the ample body of instruction and amusement, which it at once affords, will be perpetually useful as a book of general reference."
more is required than to peruse and digest their rules and regulations. When he has made himself completely master of their thoughts, he must endeavor to identify himself, as it were, with the authors and generals themselves. By this method he will probably hit upon some of those hidden truths in military science, from which many secondary ones are drawn; and in contemplating the commentaries of great generals, he will discover, that they knew well how to calculate dangers, to appreciate probabilities, and by occasionally deviating from ordinary rules, and prescribed principles, how to move in untried paths, and to obtain signal advantages, where to superficial minds, nothing but desperate hazard and destruction appeared."

Mathematics is an important auxiliary in the art of war: every branch of this science will be found useful for officers. Geometry in particular is the basis of the art; the Romans deemed it so essential that they entrusted no important command to an officer who was wholly unacquainted with its principles. The celebrated General Wolfe, in pointing out the course of study for a young officer says, "without a knowledge of mathematics he can never become acquainted with one considerable branch of our business, the construction of fortifications and the attack and defence of places; and I would advise him by all means to give up a year or two of his time, while he is young, if he has not already done it, to the study of the mathematics, because it will greatly facilitate his progress in military matters." Another scientific general in his instructions to his son, observes—"the study of the mathematics is also the most ready means of acquiring that spirit of precision so useful to any one engaged in war. Without a knowledge of geometry the ideas are most commonly vague, and the mind is incapable of comparing and of judging and calculating, but with difficulty."

It is not to be expected that every officer will become a profound geometricalian—nor is this necessary; they should however be so far conversant with it, as to calculate inaccessible heights and distances, measure surfaces and solids, and to delineate maps of the country and plans of the particular places they may be ordered to reconnoitre. In these acquirements will be found not only a fund of useful recreation, but they will enable the officer to make his reports to the commander with the greater precision and perspicuity.
Geography, and particularly that part called topography, or the description of particular places and districts of country, must by no means be neglected by officers. Those of the cavalry should be minutely acquainted with the following particulars of the country which is the seat of war—viz. the general breadth, depth and course of the rivers; their fords and bridges; the situation and extent of all remarkable mountains, defiles, ravines, morasses, bye-paths and principal roads, grounds favourable for camps and posts; the villages, towns and fortresses, with their bearing and distances from each other, and the principal woods and forests, and whether they are passable for artillery and cavalry. The want of this knowledge would give an enemy, who possessed it, an advantage too great to be balanced by almost any superiority of numbers.

The art of designing and drawing, according to the rules of perspective, is not only a source of individual amusement, but a most valuable acquisition for an officer. The ability to give, on paper, a correct view of a field of battle, fortification, or a country exhibiting a group of military, or other works, is no mean attainment. Views of this kind are often necessary to accompany plans and descriptions of places, which may be required by the commander in chief.

Another important acquirement for an officer is a correct military coup d'œil, which may be defined, that fortunate aptitude, by which he perceives at a glance of the eye, the extent of a plain, distance and height of a mountain, depth and breadth of a valley, with all the advantages and disadvantages, in a military point of view, of the country, within the reach of the eye; also the extent of ground which a given number of troops, both infantry and cavalry, may require to draw up in line, or to make any movement; the mistakes or false movements of the enemy in an engagement, and the proper disposition necessary to seize, instantly, the advantage which offers. Nothing contributes more towards qualifying an officer for command, than this sublime talent. It is this which elevates the real military genius infinitely above him, who depends altogether on art for his guide, and renders him capable of performing the most wonderful exploits.

For this talent we are much indebted to nature. Like the fire of the poet, it is not to be obtained wholly by study, and application to rules; unless we possess some natural aptitude, we must be contented forever to remain in subordinate stations.
INTRODUCTION.

But this talent may be much improved, if not perfected by art. Rules for this purpose are given by various authors: they consist principally in viewing and traversing hills, mountains and plains; estimating heights and distances and the areas of ground by the eye—correcting them by real admeasurements, and practising military manoeuvres. Hunting and travelling also contribute to the improvement of the coup d'œil. A genius for war, in these employments, will constantly be observing the face of the Country with a military eye—noting its advantages, and disadvantages—whether proper for cavalry or infantry—favorable for ambuscades, fortresses and encampments, and in what manner a corps may march over it, and secure itself from the attacks of the enemy's light troops. Thus he may greatly improve himself in the coup d'œil, and by combining with it the other necessary studies, and a little actual service, fit himself for command.

The theory and practice of artillery, and the tactics of infantry, are not altogether foreign to the study of cavalry officers; they should know the range of the different sorts of ordnance and musketry; with what rapidity they can be loaded and fired; their probable effects at given distances; the order and formation of infantry, their mode of attack, and the extent of ground a given number will occupy, when drawn up in line, column, &c. This information, aided by a correct coup d'œil, will enable them to form their plans of attack, and conduct their movements with much more certainty of success.

All officers should have some acquaintance with fortification, and especially with the construction of field works, and the methods of attacking and defending places. This is important for the cavalry officer, not because he will often find it necessary to fortify for his own defence, or to besiege places, but because such information will qualify him to choose a good position, discover the nature of the enemy's works—their strong and weak places, their vulnerable points in the order of battle—how to cover and support the flanks of the infantry to the best advantage; and finally because it will render him capable of any command to which he may be raised in the course of his service, whether of infantry, cavalry or artillery.

In equitation the cavalry officer must be thoroughly versed, otherwise he will not himself be able to ride with ease and elegance, nor be qualified to instruct others, in the var:
ous minutiae relating to this art, so essential for the cavalry soldier. A knowledge of the diseases to which horses are most liable, and of the remedies to be applied for their cure, are useful acquirements for officers. Many cases will occur, in the absence of the veterinary surgeons, that will call for the exercise of such information. A knowledge also of the time and length of pace in the movement of horses, will qualify an officer for measuring distances, with considerable accuracy, and no one should omit this useful practice.

To complete the theoretical course, military history and the biography of military men must be carefully and attentively perused. These will enrich the mind with useful matter, and furnish excellent examples for imitation, as well as many faults and mistakes to be avoided. History not only informs the understanding, but it strengthens the judgment and contributes much toward qualifying an officer for command. "It is," as a writer expresses it, "philosophy teaching by example." Knowing what has happened at any time, under any circumstances, such is the nature of man, that we may, by applying the philosophical rule, like causes produce like effects, predict with a considerable degree of certainty what will happen in similar circumstances.

All impartial well-written military histories are of incalculable advantage for young officers; they enter into many particulars of the art of war, and lead the reader as it were, by the hand, through the battles and sieges they describe, spreading before him the examples of the greatest generals, and by a kind of anticipated experience, shewing the method of prosecuting war in all its varieties. But in drawing rules from history, great allowance must be made for difference of circumstances; for it rarely happens that any two cases present those that are exactly similar. Notwithstanding there may be something relative in different positions and situations, and to a superficial view, may appear the same, yet when examined by a correct coup d'œil, great differences will be perceptible. "It would say the King of Prussia, "be bad reasoning to say Marshal Luxembourg was exactly situated as I am, he acted in such a manner, I will do the same. Past facts are good to store the imagination and the memory; they furnish a repository of ideas, whence a supply of materials may be obtained, but which should be purified by passing through the strainer of the judgment."
INTRODUCTION.

It is the real military genius, he who is endowed with a quick apprehension, a vivacity of disposition, a rapid coup d’œil, who can turn to his advantage the exploits of able commanders, as recorded in history, and who knows, instantly, how far it will be safe and proper to follow or vary from the schemes that have been adopted in similar situations.

In military history the most useful lessons are found in the campaigns of enterprising and scientific commanders,* but the mistakes and errors of less able leaders are not without their uses; they sometimes impress the mind more forcibly than brilliant exploits, and stimulate to greater exertions to avoid similar misfortunes: And it should be recollected that good fortune does not always attend the best concerted plans; she is sometimes very capricious and is not to be managed by ordinary means; many excellent officers have met her continued frowns, who seem to have merited her favors as richly as others that have invariably been blest with her smiles.

Besides the movements, battles and sieges described in history, the military reader will attentively notice the alterations in the organization of armies, the changes that have recently been made in tactics, the improvements in engineering, the construction and management of artillery in the field, and in fortified places, the new arrangement and organization of the staff departments, and every other article that relates to war.

Civil history is by no means to be considered as foreign to the study of young officers; from this they may derive a knowledge of the nature and principles of government, and the laws of nations, as practised by the civilized world. Some knowledge of these is of the utmost service to a commander, wheth-

*Our revolutionary war affords many excellent lessons for officers. The campaigns under the immediate conduct of the commander in chief are full of instruction: Those of General Green, in the southern states, being a proper partisan war, are replete with ingenious examples. Many gallant exploits were performed by the able officers of light troops under his command, which are well worthy the attention of officers. Details of these may be found in Marshal’s life of Washington—Ramsay’s and Stedman’s histories of the war, and the respective memoirs of the conflicting colonels Tarleton and Lee. The memoirs of the latter in 2 vol. 8 vo. have lately been published and ought to be in the hands of every officer.
er of an army or detachment. Statistical history, which comprehends all those topics of enquiry which interest the statist, or statesman, and which they are interested to know, such as the situation, strength and resources of a nation, is also useful for young officers, and ought to occupy many of their leisure hours.

Let not the young officer be startled at the course of study here pointed out. Let him recollect that he may "be occupied with many things not strictly military—the responsibility of which, the exigencies of public affairs may require him to take upon himself—that their is no service in which extensive views and great knowledge and information will be found so essentially necessary, on particular occasions, as in his—that to distinguish himself in his profession, he must commence by laying the foundation of his superiority as a man; that to laugh at learning, and to hug our ignorance, is the miserable fashion of coxcombs, and the imitation of those who never were born to be eminent in any profession, or to be excellent in any human pursuit—that learning strengthens the understanding, purifies the heart and elevates the mind, and that if this lies fallow, even for a single moment, it vegetates weeds and brambles, which afterwards require the labor of weeks, months and years to eradicate." By a due perseverance in the course of study as pointed out, with a few years practice in the field, aided by a little genius for his profession, an officer will embrace the whole science of war, and fit himself for conducting a corps submitted to his command, with honor and satisfaction to himself, his friends and his country.

The strength and respectability of a corps depends greatly on a good choice of non-commissioned officers; for they are intrusted with much of its interior management; they should therefore be brave and prudent, as absolute in their commands to inferiors as submissive to those of their superiors—equitable and just in their dealings, write a good hand and understand the methods of keeping accounts. They must be very circumspect in all parts of their duty—watching over the men and treating them with mildness, but at the same time obliging every one to perform his duty, with the utmost exactness. When instructing the recruits, they must exercise all their patience, by no means abusing them for their awkwardness in the first lessons, where precision is not to be expected; those only who are willfully negligent are to be punished. They
must suppress all quarrels and disputes among the men, and
when other means fail, use their authority in bringing the of-
Fenders to punishment.

The non commissioned officers must also be perfectly ac-
quainted with equitation, the exercise and movements of ca-
vairy, and the principles on which these are founded, that they
may instruct the recruits in every part of their duty, and ex-
plain to them the uses of the different exercises and move-
ments which they are taught. They must pay the utmost at-
tention to every thing that has a tendency to promote subor-
dination and due respect towards their officers; teach the men
how to salute them on all occasions, and the whole of that de-
portment so becoming and necessary in the soldier—see that
their uniform and clothing, arms and equipments are, at all
times, clean and in good order; that the horses are well cur-
rried, brushed and trimmed and ready for service.

When planting a vidette, the non commissioned officer must
be very careful and particular that he gives his orders so that
they may be perfectly understood by the vidette; and he must
impress upon him the importance of his trust and let him
know that the security of the post depends upon his vigilance.
He must instruct him in the manner of challenging rounds pa-
trols, or any who may approach, and how to conduct when
any person has not the countersign. In short, the non com-
mmissioned officers must be perfect in all the duties of their sev-
eral departments, encouragers and supporters of good order
and discipline, and assiduous in the pursuit of military knowl-
edge; otherwise they must not expect to gain the affection of
their officers or to be promoted to higher grades.


The following catalogue of approved military works, is
recommended to such young officers, as are ambitious of ob-
taining extensive knowledge of the science of war. Some
are inserted from the recommendations of scientific officers,
others from their characters as given in judicious reviews, and
others from the author’s own knowledge of their merits.

Remarks on Cavalry, by Gen. Warnery; numerous plates,
1 vol. 4to.

Treatise on the Duty of Light Troops, by Col. Van Eh-
wald, 1 vol.

Duties of an Officer in the Field, and principally of Light
Troops, by Baron Gross, 1 vol.
Art of Defence on Foot, with the Broad Sword and Sabre, with plates; by R. K. Porter, 1 vol.
Vandeleur's Duty of Officers commanding Detachments in the Field, 1 vol.
Duty of Infantry Officers in Camp and Garrison and on Shipboard, by T. Reade, 1 vol.
Grandmaison on Light Troops, 1 vol.
Stevenson's Military Instructions, 1 vol.
Essay on the Art of War, by Count Turpin, 2 vol. 4to.
The experienced Officer, or Instructions, by Gen. Wimpffen, 1 vol.
Military Mentor, in letters from a General Officer to his Son, 2 vol.
Essays on the Theory and Practice of War, including the duty of Officers in actual service, and the principles of modern tactics, by the editor of the Military Mentor, 3 vol.
Regimental Companion, containing the relative duties of every Officer in the army, by Charles James, 2 vol. and Supplement, 1 vol.
Spirit of the modern System of War, by a Prussian General, with a Commentary by C. M. de Martemont, Captain in the French Artillery, 1 vol.
Duties of the Etat Major in the French Army, by Thiebault, 1 vol.
King of Prussia's Instructions to his Generals, 1 vol.
Epitome of Military Events, or Historical Essays on the present War, maps and plates, 2 vol.
Whitmore's General System of Tactics and Military Arrangements: containing observations on Light Infantry, Field Fortification and the Petite Guerre, 1 vol.
Practical Observations on the Errors committed by commanders of Detachments, from 1743 to the present time; including a new System of Fortification, by Adjutant General Armstrong, of the British Army, 1 vol.
Brigade Majors's Assistant, 1 vol.
Guibert's general Essays on Tactics, 1 vol.
Practical System of the Art of War, translated from the German of G. Venturini, illustrated with numerous plates, 4 vol. 4to.
Puységur's Art of War.
Elements of Artillery, by Col. Tousard, 2 vol. and 1 of plates.

Treatise on Military Equitation, with plates, by Col. Tyndale, 1 vol.

Instructions concerning the Duties of Light Infantry in the field, by Gen. Jarry, 1 vol.
Le Mesurier's British Commissary, 1 vol.
Marshall Sax's Reveries on the Art of War, 1 vol. 4to.
James's Military Dictionary, (large) 1 vol.
Kosciusko's Maneuvres of Horse Artillery, 1 vol.
Duane's Military Library, 2 vol.
The Field of Mars, being an alphabetical digestion of the principal naval and military engagements from the 8th century, to the peace of 1814; 2 vol. 4to.

Vegetius' Ancient Art of War, translated by Clark, 1 vol.
Adye's Pocket Gunner, 1 vol.
Military Memoirs of Marshal Turenne, 1 vol.
Military and Political History, by Col. De Lacroix, 1 vol.
Landman's Field Engineers Vade Mecum, 1 vol.
Lochee's Field Fortification, plates, 1 vol.
Lochee's Essay on forming Camps, plates, 1 vol.
Martemont's Field Fortification, plates, 1 vol.
Genie on Fortification, 1 vol.
Muller on Fortification, Attack and Defence, Engineering and Artillery, plates, 8 vol.
Tielk's Field Engineer, 2 vol.
Sime's Military Science, 1 vol. 4to.
Hutton's Military Mathematics, 2 vol.

Tytler on Military Law and the Practice of Courts Martial, 1 vol.

Adye on General Courts Martial, 1 vol.
Macomb on Courts Martial, 1 vol.


British Military Library, charts and plates, 2 vol. 4to.
INTRODUCTION.

Note. There are extant a great variety of Treatises, relating to the discipline of Troops, and the duties of the parade; and did our limits permit, we might swell this catalogue with many respectable French works that have not been translated into English. A few of which will be added, for the French reader.

Essai General de Fortification et d'Attaque et Defense des Places, &c. par M. de B.—Ingenieur Francois, 4to and plates, folio.

Instructions concernnant le service de l'Infanterie legere en campagne, 1 vol.

Le Cours et le Traite de Tactique, par Joly de Mezoroy.
Pensees sur la Tactique, et la Strategie, par M. de Sylva.
Le Partisan, par Jenney.
La Petite Guerre, par M. le Capt. Knock.
Le Chasseur a la Guerre, ou du service des troupes legeres. Observations sur le service de Cavalerie a la Guerre; parle Chevalier de Shonacken.

L'Attaque et la Defense des places, par Marshal de Vauban.

L'Ingineer de Compagne par St Remi.
Ideaux Raisonnees sur un Systeme General &c. pour etudier la Science de la Guerre par N. de Schorn.
Stratagemes de Guerre—by M. C. de la Rosiere.
Sentimens d'un officier Hessois sur l'art de conduire les det achemens a la Guerre.

Recent American Works.

Elements of War, by Gen. Maltby, 1 vol.
Treatise on Courts Martial, by Do. 1 vol.
Hand Book for Infantry, by Wm. Duane, 1 vol.
Advice to Officers of the Army, 1 vol.
RULES AND Regulations FOR
CAVALRY.

PART I.

OF THE DRILL.

THE drill comprises the first principles of military exercises and movements: here the recruit is divested of that stiffness, and rusticity, common to simple nature, and taught that mechanical and easy habit of performing his duty, so necessary to qualify him to act in concert with those around him, and to insure that energy which results from combined effort.

The drill instructors must be masters of military equitation, thoroughly acquainted with the exercise and movements of both cavalry and infantry; eminently good tempered, patient and firm, and they should possess an aptitude for teaching and managing the men and horses, otherwise it will be difficult to carry the recruit through the necessary lessons with that mildness and facility necessary to insure an attachment to his duty and love of his profession.

FOOT DRILL.

The recruits are first to be taken singly and taught to put on and place their accoutrements properly. The sabre is to be slung upon the left side, by a belt passing over the right shoulder; the stirrup of the hilt to be even with the left elbow when pressed against the side of the body, the point of the sabre reaching nearly to the ground. A leather strap is sometimes used as a brace, extending from a point, near the middle of the scabbard, to the hind part of the belt, to give the sabre a diagonal position; but this is not of great importance.

The cartridge box is placed in front, upon the lower part of the belly, supported by a waist belt. The helmet should be worn square to the front and nearly perpendicular; it is a common fault to place them inclining back.
which is an ungraceful and painful position. The spurs should be placed some distance above the heel of the boot, the shank a little elevated, that it may clear the ground when walking, and be in a direction proper for use.

1. Position on Foot.

The heels in a line about three inches assunder, the toes turned out to form an angle of sixty degrees, the knees back but not stiff, arms hanging straight down, with the palms of the hand on the outside of the thighs; the shoulders well back, breast a little projected and the belly rather drawn in; the head erect and square to the front, and the chin drawn a little in toward the upper part of the breast.

The recruit is apt to assume a constrained and unnatural position, that soon becomes painful; the instructor must remedy this, by placing himself in the true attitude before the recruit, and show him that it is easy as well as graceful. In this position the recruit will continue till the command is given.

Rest!

On which he will instantly draw back his right foot about eight inches behind his left heel, at the same time bending his left knee and bringing his hands together. He will now stand at ease and move his body, head and arms at pleasure, but must not shift his left foot from its original position.

Attention!

At this command the former position is to be instantly resumed, by bringing up the right foot and dropping the hands down the outside of the thighs. While under attention no motion whatever is to be made with the head, body, hands or feet, except by command.

2. The Facings.

Right—Face!

1. At the last word, raise the toes and turn briskly on both heels a quarter of a circle to the right, without bending the knees.

2. Bring back the right foot, and place the heel even with the left, at the distance of three inches.

Left—Face!

1. Turn on both heels, a quarter circle to the left.

2. Bring up the right heel within three inches of the left.
FOOT DRILL.

Right About—Face!

1. Step back the right foot, behind the left heel, so far as to clear the spur, the knees kept straight.
2. Raise the toes and turn quickly on both heels, describing half a circle.
3. Bring back the right foot to its former position.

Note. In the facing, the left heel is the pivot on which the body turns, and must never move from its place.

3. Dressings.

Six or eight recruits must be placed in an irregular line, or rank, about a pace from each other, and taught to dress or straighten, from the right and left, by the following commands.

Right—Dress!

Each recruit turns his head briskly to the right, so that the left eye may be in a line with the centre of the body, the shoulders continuing square to the front, and looks to the right; the two right hand men stand fast, the others advance or retire till they find themselves in a line with the two right hand men.

Front!

At this word heads are turned square to the front, the eyes looking directly forward.

The rank must now be put out of dress, and taught to dress to the left.

Left—Dress!

Heads are turned to the left as before to the right, the eyes looking along the front, each man, excepting the two on the left, advancing or retiring till he finds himself in a line with the two left flank men.

Front!

The whole turn heads and eyes to the front.

After dressing to the right and left, as above described, they must be taught to dress forward and backward, on a new alignment, as follows. Two men are advanced a few paces, suppose four, from the right flank: the command is then given

By the Right—Forward Dress!

The man on the right moves quickly forward, stepping off with the left foot, turning his head and eyes to the right, and when he finds himself in a line with the two advanced men, halts and turns head and eyes to the front;
the remaining men proceed in the same manner, each keeping a little in the rear of his respective right hand man, and come up to the new alignment in succession. The left forward dress is performed on the same principles and requires no explanation.

If it be required to dress backward by a flank, two men must be placed in the rear for a new alignment, and at the command, by the right or by the left backward dress, the whole fall back in succession, by stepping off with the left foot to the rear; and dress by the flank men, marking the new alignment, and turn heads and eyes to the front.

Note. The common faults in dressing are, stooping forward, passing the alignment, and turning the shoulders from their squareness.

4. Of the Various Steps.

The different steps, as practised by the infantry when marching to the front, are the following:

- Common or ordinary step: 75
- Quick step: 108 in a minute
- Quickest step: 120

The length of the step is thirty inches, measured from heel to heel. Other steps are practised by the infantry, such as the oblique step—side step—back step and time step. The oblique step is used when it is necessary to gain ground to the flank and front, at the same time; the side step, to close or open the files of a rank, or to gain a small distance to the right or left; the back step is used for a small movement to the rear, and the time step to mark time, without gaining ground, when a momentary delay is necessary for troops behind to come up and dress.

In teaching recruits the time and length of step, pendulums of different lengths, and a piece of ground graduated to paces, afford great assistance. By these aids they will soon acquire the true cadence, and move in the different steps, by command of the officers, without musick drums, or any adventitious guide.

5. The March to the Front.

Several recruits are to be placed in a rank, correctly dressed, and taught to march, in line, to the front, at the command of the instructor.

Forward—March!

At the first word the weight of the body is to be balanced on the right foot; at the second, the left foot is lifted
FOOT DRILL.

From the ground and carried forward, making a step of 30 inches, in common time, the toes pointed down so that the foot may fall flat when it comes down; the head kept in the habitual position, the body inclining a little forward. When the left foot comes to the ground, the right is brought forward in the same manner; and thus the recruits continue to advance, well balanced on their limbs, till the word is given

_Halt!:_

On which the whole stop suddenly on the advanced foot, bringing up the other to the standing position.

When the command quick-step, march, is given, the whole move in that step until another is ordered, or the word given to halt. If the command mark time be given when on the march, the foot advanced completes the step, the other is then brought up to it, placed on the ground and the cadence continued, by alternately throwing out the feet without advancing, and at the command forward, the march is continued as before.

6. FILE MARCHING.

In file marching the men follow each other, in one or more files, from a flank, or any named point. It must be performed in all the steps and even on a kind of trot. The leading man will govern the step of the whole, and move with as much regularity and equality of step, as possible; those following him, carefully observing to step the same feet at the same time. The toe must be a little more turned out and the body inclined more forward, than in marching in line: when an individual has lost the step, or is marching with a different foot from the others, he must change feet, thus—the advanced foot completes its step, the ball of the other is brought quickly up, by a kind of hop, to the heel of the advanced one, which, at the same time, makes another step and thereby corrects the error.

In addition to the foot drill, as here laid down, it may be useful to teach the recruits the method of wheeling, forming and deploying columns, dispersing and rallying, and many other movements of infantry: And, if armed with carabines, they should be taught the manual exercise and firings of light infantry or riflemen, as the nature of their arms may require, that they may be ready to act on foot, when circumstances compel them to dismount and attack infantry, in covered situations.
For instruction in these particulars, reference may be had to the tactics of infantry and riflemen.

The foot drill is an important part of cavalry discipline. Besides the advantages arising from their knowledge of infantry movements, many of which are absolutely necessary for cavalry, it completely divests them of that awkward rustic gait and manner, natural to most men—gives them a soldierly confidence, graceful walk and military air, so conspicuous and becoming, in the well disciplined soldier.

MOUNTED DRILL.

The mounted drill includes the combined instructions, for both man and horse, in all the exercises and movements preparatory to those of the company or troop; and it necessarily comprises many parts of military equitation.

7. ACCOUTRING THE HORSE.

Previous to mounting, the recruit must be taught to bridle, saddle and accoutre his horse, in the best manner.

The bit should be placed over the tongue, a little above the tusk, but not so high as to distort the lips, which would produce restiveness in the horse. The nose and throat strap, must be closely buckled; the curb chain hooked rather lax, and it should sit smooth and equal against the jaw; twisting it to the right before it is hooked, will cause it to lie in this manner. The headstall ought to be drawn up so as to lie even against the cheeks, and the halter and all parts of the bridle must rest easily upon every part of the head, in which they come in contact.

The saddle is to be placed square upon the horse's back, the crupper of such length as to permit the fore part to rest near the withers, but by no means to press upon them; the girths, surcingle, and breast strap, are to be drawn moderately; too much tension will render the horse uneasy and embarrass his movements.

The stirrups should be of such length that, when the rider places his feet in them, the toes may be a little higher than the heels. The method of riding with the legs and feet extended to the utmost stretch, forking out from the horse like a crotch, is as ungraceful as it is inconvenient, and wholly inadmissible in military equitation.

The length of stirrup is determined in the following manner: Let the rider place himself in the saddle, str...
even and upright, with his legs hanging easily down, by the stirrups; then shorten or lengthen the straps till the bottom of the stirrups are on a level or even with the ankle bones. This gives a safe, easy and natural seat, and the rider will be able to raise himself sufficiently from the saddle when he makes a stroke with his sabre.

The holsters are to be firmly attached to the fore part of the saddle, in such a manner as not to incommode the rider; the cap buttoned down to secure the pistols.

8. Mounting.

When the recruit is to mount, he leads up his horse to the ground, places him square on all fours, the bridle reins placed straight and even upon his neck; the loop upon the snaffle reins slipped down to the mane, the ends on the right side. Care must be taken that they are not twisted or tangled, nor drawn too tight. The recruit will place himself on the left, nearly even with his horse's head, his right hand grasping the left reins, close to the bit, the back of the hand up; the other hand, feet, body and head, in the standing position, described in the foot drill. Before the command is given for any movement, the recruit must always be brought to his proper position, by the word attention.

Prepare to Mount!

1. Step back with the right foot, so far as to bring the right side against the middle of the saddle, turning to the right on the left heel at the same time, and bring up the left foot within three inches of the right; at the same time quit the reins with the right hand, and seize them with the left, and slip it along the reins to the loop; put the forefinger over the right, and the little one over the left rein, and grasp a lock of mane with the same hand.

2. With the right hand take hold of the stirrup leather, just above the iron, pull it a little from the horse, and place the left foot in the stirrup, the ball resting on the bottom; the knee close to the horse's shoulder, the left hand still grasping the mane.

3. Bring the right hand down the right side.

Mount!

1. Bring up the right hand and seize the off part of the cantle of the saddle; hop lightly up in the stirrup, and bring the right foot near the left heel, and look
square across the horse, making a small pause, with the body upright.

2. Swing the right leg over the saddle, without touching, shifting the right hand, at the same instant, to the off side of the pommel, to sustain the weight of the body; sink down into the saddle, and catch the stirrup with the right foot, and quitting the mane with the left hand, slip the loop of the bridle back to its proper place, and gently feel the horse's mouth.


The head and body upright; the latter rather inclining back—head and eyes square to the front—the shoulders back—breast a little projected—the elbows hanging directly under the shoulders, and touching, but not pressing the sides—the left hand grasping the bridle reins about six inches from the body, and near the weight of the elbow, which will place it three or four inches above the pommel—the three first fingers between the reins, the thumb and finger on opposite sides—the end of the reins on the right side of the horse's neck—the right hand hanging gracefully down the right side. The thighs and knees are to be turned in to the saddle—the legs hanging naturally down, and lightly touching the sides of the horse, the balls of the feet resting on the bottom of the stirrup, and the feet nearly parallel with the body of the horse. The reins must be extended by the left hand so as lightly to feel the horse's mouth with the bit.*

In acquiring a right seat on horseback, great care is necessary to prevent stiffness. Young riders are very apt to stoop forward, and assume an ungraceful attitude, especially when the horse is moving, and when they consider themselves in danger of loosing their seats; this renders them more liable to be unhorsed when they get a little displaced, than if they were more at ease. No

*This feel of the mouth, is termed, in the riding schools, the appui. It is the reciprocal effort, or sense of the action between the horse's mouth and the bridle hand of the rider. The appui is acquired by habit; every rider having one adapted to his horse, and it consists in the nice bearing up, or stay of the bridle, so that the horse, awed by the sensibility of the mouth, does not rest too much upon the bit, nor beat upon the hand so withstand it,
One can be well, or firmly seated on horseback, unless he is unconstrained, at ease, in full possession of himself, and completely master of the balance of his body. When the equilibrium is lost, and the horse makes a sudden and unexpected movement, such as plunging or rearing, the rider is most certainly thrown. The seat in such cases is to be recovered only by the proper grasp of the thighs and legs, and a due flexibility of the body.

If a recruit has not been habituated to riding, he ought first to be mounted upon a very gentle horse, and not be put to the trot, till he is quite easy in the walk, nor to the gallop, till he is familiar with the trot. Many of our recruits, from their natural agility, and the constant practice of managing horses if they have not acquired bad habits, become good riders in a very little time.

10. Dismounting.

This is done by two commands and motions.

Prepare—to Dismount.

1. With the right hand raise the bridle reins towards the body, and with the left hand slip the loop down to the neck, and grasp a lock of mane.

2. Drop the reins from the right hand, down the right side of the horse's neck; disengage the right foot from the stirrup, and bring the right hand down the right side.

Dismount!

1. Bring the right hand to the right holster; raise the body a little up, and carry the right foot over the horse, to the left heel; at the same time shifting the right hand from the holster, to the cantle of the saddle, the body erect and facing the horse.

2. Sink the body till the right foot feels the ground, keeping the right hand upon the cantle.

3. Quitting the stirrup with the left foot, step up the same to the front, turning on the right heel, and bring up the right foot within three inches of the left; at the same time, quit the mane and the cantle, and with the right hand, seize the reins close to the bit, and stand in the dismounted position.

When mounting and dismounting, the horse must be taught to stand perfectly still, and he should not move afterwards, without a word or signal. To acquire expertness, the mounting and dismounting should be prac-
52 MOUNTED DRILL.

tised on each side of the horse; in cases of hurry this may sometimes be necessary.

11. FORMING AND DRESSING IN RANK.

A number of men placed side by side, on the same line, are called a rank. In all formation of ranks, the men dress to the hand they form to; in coming up, they must be careful not to pass the line on which they are to dress; they will trot up, collect their horses, and move slowly when near the line, otherwise they will pass it, and be obliged to rein back. The men assume their proper position at the command, attention, and this must be continued, in all cases where no movement is to be made, till the command is given to rest.

The dressings are performed by the commands Right! [or] Left! Dress! the instructor previously placing himself on the flank from which the dressing commences.—The dressings forward and backward, by a flank, are executed by the same words used in the foot drill for those dressings, and the movements are similar.

12. TURNING OR FACING.

A horse turns either on his fore feet, or a point under the centre of his body; the first is mostly used where a small portion of the circle is to be described; the second where a greater turn is necessary, as in going about, where the half circle is described.

If the recruits are instructed in rank, the distance of a horse's length should be preserved between the files.

Right—Turn!

Raise the bridle hand, carrying it to the right withal, and turn the body and head a little in that direction; at the same time close the right leg to the horse's side, back toward the flank, touching with the spur if necessary, * and turn a quarter circle to the right, keeping the fore legs in the centre, as much as possible, then turn the body and head square to the front.

Left—Turn!

Applying the aids to the left, as before to the right, using the left leg, turn the horse a quarter circle to the left, and resume the common attitude.

*The action of the hands, legs and body, in the movements of the horse, are termed aids. The application of the whip, spur and voice are called corrections.
MOUNTED DRILL.

Left about—Turn!

This is performed on the principles above described, the motion being continued till the half circle is gone over, with this exception, that the fore legs assist in the movement, the pivot being under the centre of the horse's body.

The turn to the right about may also be taught, to render the horse dexterous; but this will seldom be necessary in practice; one method is sufficient, and the turn to left about is performed with the greatest facility.

13. PASSAGING.

The passage, or side movement, is necessary in opening and closing the files of a rank, and to correct false openings, occasioned by restiveness of the horses.

To teach this movement, bring the horse up to a wall, carry the bridle and head over his neck, to the direction the passage is to be made, turning the head of the horse a little in the same direction, till his shoulders are in motion, then close the leg opposite to the direction toward the flank of the horse, and he will move sideways on all fours. When the passage is completed, take off the aiding leg, apply the opposite one, and bring him square to the front, well balanced on his legs. In a little time the horse will move on parade at a word, or signal, even without the aid of hands and legs. The words of command for the movement are as follows.—

If to the right,

Passage—to the Right!

Aids are applied in that direction, and the horse moves to the right.

Halt—Front!

If to the left,

Passage—to the Left!—Halt!—Front!

14. REINING BACK.

Drawing gently upon the curb and playing upon the bit, will generally throw back the horse; but if he refuses and stands motionless, the legs must be applied to his sides and the spur gently used, while the hand is acting on the bit, which will produce the desired effect, by raising one of his forelegs, which, being off the ground, is easily brought back by the action of the hand; the legs of the rider must govern the direction of the croup, by pressing the side to which it turns. If the horse is
obstinate and still refuses to back, let a person on foot strike him gently, on the fore legs, with a small rod, while the hand is acting upon the bit. Some word of command should be used at the same time, as rein back: when he obeys, he should be soothed, encouraged and gently clapped with the hand. By instructing him in this manner, he will soon perform the movement at command, and readily fall back, when exercising in the ranks, keeping in line with those on the right and left.

15. THE DIFFERENT PACES.

The natural paces of the horse are four: the walk, trot, gallop and charge.* The trot and gallop are performed with different degrees of celerity; the former is divided into the slow and brisk trot, the latter into the canter and brisk gallop. The charge is the full speed of the horse, when performing singly, and it is sometimes accelerated by a free use of the spur; but when charging in rank, it is to be regarded as a general rule, that the speed of the slowest horse is to govern that of the whole. If this is disregarded, a line or column on the charge, will soon be broken and fall into confusion; the swiftest horse will outstrip the one that has less speed, and this the next, and so on till the whole are strung out into a loose mass, and thereby lose the advantages derived from a combined movement, mutual aid and effort. The brisk gallop is necessary where a speed little less than the charge is required, and the canter and trot, in coming to a halt, or in rising from a walk to the charge.

Horses differ in the length and quickness of their paces, but they should as nearly as possible stretch three feet in the walk and four in the brisk trot; and walk at least a mile in a quarter of an hour. Some will walk five miles in an hour.

16. ADVANCE AND CHANGE OF PACE.

The drill must be drawn up in a rank entire, in open files, with the instructor on the flank, to which the men.

* There is another pace natural to some horses, called the amble, in which the legs of the same side, for instance, the off fore and hind leg move at the same time, and then the two near legs. This pace is improper for cavalry horses.
are to dress. The command is then to be given,

*Forward—March!*

Raise the bridle hand and increase the appui, at the same time gently press the horse, with the legs, and move him directly forward in the walk, carefully observing the true seat in the saddle, and distance of files; if the horse refuses to advance by the pressure of the legs, instantly raise the heels and applying the spurs, back of the girth, force him on; the instant he moves take off the legs, and place them in the true position, and lessen the appui. Each horse must advance directly forward, on parallel lines, which are at right angles with that on which the rank stood before the advance; and must not deviate to the right or left, or any small obstructions, or inequalities of ground.

*Slow—Trot!*

Raise the bridle, increasing the appui, and applying the legs to the horse, put him into the slow trot.

*Canter!*

Increase the appui and suddenly ease the reins, closing the legs to the sides.

*Slow—Trot! { Halt! Dress! { [Or] Walk!}*

*Note—It is to be observed as a general rule, when the pace is not designated in the command, to advance on the walk, and this pace is to be continued, till some other is ordered.*

*Brisk Trot—March!*

At this command the drill advances on the brisk trot, observing the dress, and intervals of files.

*Brisk—Gallop!*

The whole instantly rise into a gallop quicker than the canter, but less than the full speed.

*Slow—Trot! { Halt! Dress! { [Or] Walk!}*

*On the Canter—March!*

The whole advance on the canter, and continue the same till the instructor orders.

*Slow—Trot! { Halt! Dress! { [Or] Walk!}*

After the horses are habituated to the changes of pace, as above directed, they are to be halted from the canter and gallop without previously falling into a
trot or walk; but if circumstances will permit, it is best, even with instructed horses, to bring them to the halt, gradually, by falling into the slower paces.

All changes of pace must be accompanied with corresponding motions of the hands and legs, as aids, and the greatest gentleness used, excepting where the horses are obstinate and refuse to obey, in which case the spurs may be applied as correctives, but they must be used sparingly. If it be necessary to bring the horses to a halt, from a brisk gallop, it must be done by an elevated and lengthened tone of voice, otherwise it will be overpowered by the noise of the horses. If the rank is much out of dress, when it comes to the halt, it is most easily dressed by the flank or centre, by a forward movement of a few paces.

In riding, the bridle hand is to be kept a little from the body, and as steady as if it were supporting a bowl of water; the body retaining its true position and equilibrium, the thighs and toes turned in towards the horse, and, when without the sword, the right hand hanging easily down the side.

17. The Riding Square and Circle.

The riding square is an oblong piece of level ground about fifty yards long and twenty five broad, marked out by small camp colors at the four corners, on which the recruits are taught to march, file, wheel and turn in various directions, under the drill instructor and riding master.

The instructor will place four, or six men in a file, in the centre of the square, and order them to march at a walk, round the square; when the leading man comes to the line between two colors, he turns to the right, followed by the others, each a horse's length distant, moves on, turns the corners and makes the circuit of the square. Each horse must be rode straight into the corners and turned by the usual aids, as have been described, and distance of files carefully observed. The drill should frequently be halted and false distances corrected.

Having passed round the square and gone on to the middle of the next longest side, the drill will close file, cross the square in the middle, turn and go on to the right as before; when past the next shortest side, and
MOUNTED DRILL.

About five yards advanced on the long one, change, that is, cross the square diagonally, to within five yards of the opposite corner, and when on the new line, shorten the inside rein, quarter turn to the left, go on to the left one turn, double and change as before; trot two turns, and double and change; canter two turns, double and change; slow trot, walk, halt, rein back, at three several times, making a short halt between each, and move up to the original ground.

The drill should here be made to go over the first exercises: viz. mounting, dismounting, turning, rein back, passing and changing the paces. Attention should be paid to the aids, seat and position. Great moderation and good temper in the recruit, towards his horse must be insisted on, and the spur must be used with caution, and sparingly.

In addition to the drill on the square, the horses should be practised in trotting and cantering on circles, of different diameters, traced on the ground with wet lime, or other white substance.

In the trotting lesson three or four turns should be made, first to the right and then to the left; the inside rein must be shortened & the rider's body turned towards the centre of the circle. When he is firm on the horse in the trot, he may proceed to the canter; the horse must lead with the inside leg, before and behind, and the rider must be taught to know when his horse canters false, even without looking at his feet; he must bear considerably towards the centre of the circle, and, as the horse increases his pace, the leaning must be increased, and the body carried more back. The instructor will carefully observe the movements of the recruits, correct any errors, and applaud them for their dexterity.

A horse gallops false on the circle, if he leads with the outside legs; that is, in going to the right if he lead with the left, and going to the left, with the right leg. If he lead with the inner leg before, and the off behind, he is said to gallop disunited. When any of these occur, the horse must be halted and corrected in his movements.

The above lessons, with proper attention, will, in a short time, supple the horse and render him accurate.
and dexterous in his movements, as well as the recruit, who should ride with sword drawn, and properly carried, to habituate him to its weight.

18 LEAPING.

The recruits having progressed thus far in the drill, should now be taught the method of leaping their horses over fences, hedges, ditches, &c. which they will have to perform in almost every engagement and petty skirmish.

The leaps, at first, should be small: a bar may be supported about three feet high, on a piece of level ground, and as the horses become habituated to this height, it may be increased to that of a common fence. It may be necessary, at first, to lead them a few times back and forth over the bar, without a rider: after which, let the recruits mount and go over it in a standing leap. When the horse rises to double up his fore legs, gently feel his mouth with the snaffle, keeping the hand true and steady, holding the bridle back of the pommel, close the legs just behind the girths, drop the heels, lightly feel the stirrups, turning the thighs and knees close to the saddle, and carefully preserve the equilibrium of the body; at the same time advance the chest till it is very near the horse's neck, but the back must not be bent forward, but kept hollowed. When the horse springs and passes the bar, the body must be brought upright and immediately carried back so that the shoulders may be near the croup of the horse, when he grounds. The inclining of the body back, in this manner, is the greatest security in leaping, and prevents the rider from being thrown over the horse's head. The perfection of the art is to keep the body nearly perpendicular to the horizon, during the rising, spring, and grounding of the horse, at the same time flexible and well balanced, and the thighs, legs and knees in contact with the saddle and sides of the horse. Some practice the shortening of the reins, when the horse rises: this is obviously improper. It tends to embarrass the horse and exposes the rider to be thrown over his head, when he grounds.

In flying leaps less inclination of the body is necessary; for the horse rises more gradually, and describes a longer curve, and the perpendicularity is more easily
preserved than in the standing leaps. The appui must be a little more full, and may be continued during the movement; the body should be kept pliable and inclined back—the saddle gently gripped by the thighs and knees, and little pressure made on the stirrups, as in the standing leaps.

The horse should, at first, be brought up to the leap, where he may view it for some time, and familiarize himself to the objects around. If it be a ditch, let it, in the first lessons, be narrow—if a bar, rather low and such as can be safely passed; otherwise the horse may be foiled and become timorous in his leaps. In the first lessons the horse should move on a trot, but in practice generally on a canter.

10 General instructions relating to the management of the horses.

Great care and pains must be taken in teaching the horses the exercises and movements of the drill, and considerable time is necessary to render them supple, steady and obedient. Severe correction is, as much as possible, to be avoided and never to be resorted to, till gentle means and cherishing have been tried. Every horse of good temper, will submit to these, if he be made sensible, how and when to do that which is required of him. If correction becomes necessary, as may be the case when the horse obstinately refuses his lessons, he should be punished, and at the instant he committs the fault, though moderately; but never for ignorance which might make him timorous and create an aversion to his exercises.

The spurs are of great use in managing a horse. They are not confined to putting him forward, as many suppose, but by them, the croup is governed as the head is by the bridle, and the horse will move sideways, if only one be applied, and straight forward if both. By using him gently in this manner, he will soon obey the least touch of the leg, without the spur, of which he still retains a remembrance.

By this use of the legs and spurs, a horse may be made to keep straight along a road, when he is alarmed at any object on one side. If the object be on the left, hold his head high with the bit, pull it from the object, apply the right leg to his side back towards his flank,
and touch him with the spur; he will then go straight along the road, and by turning his head further, his croup may be forced up to the object at which he is alarmed. In the same manner his croup is turned to the right, with the left spur.

This use of the spur, in connection with the usual aids of the hands and legs, is sufficient for the complete government of the horse in all his movements. If it becomes necessary to use the spur as a correction, the rider must not apply it with violence, but with moderate force, pressing still harder if he persists in his obstinacy.

The proper use of the curb is a point of importance in managing a horse. It ought to be used very cautiously; a gentle turn of the wrist is sufficient to govern one that has been well managed. When the rider brings his horse from a brisk gallop to the walk, he gives a smart check with the curb, with an even hand, but he should never jerk hard upon it, unless he means to correct him, which, in general, is better done with some tone of voice, by which the horse may understand that the rider dislikes his conduct.

It is essential that the horses should be well bitted; that is, possess a sensibility in the mouth, which will prevent them from resting too heavily upon the bit, at the same time that they bear duly upon it. The appui should be full, rather than slack, and the horse should carry his head steady and even, and not throw out his nose, which prevents all justness in the appui. To give him the correct appui, he should be galloped gently, frequently halted and reined back with the bridle.

"A light lively hand on horseback, cannot be too often inculcated. When the recruit begins to ride with a snaffle bit, he should be taught to play it in the horse's mouth, and constantly to feel and ease him; this not only lightens the recruit's hand, but preserves and often restores the sensibility of a horse's mouth, rendered callous by hard pulling and bad riding. When he comes to ride with a bit and curb, the horse should not be allowed to move five yards, at any pace, without relaxing the reins and again feeling the horse's mouth. This should be done by the movement of the wrist of the bridle hand only; the arm from the wrist to the
shoulder being at all times, and in all paces, to be kept perfectly steady, the elbow touching the side, and not to move or be influenced by the horse's motion."

Cavalry horses should be well accustomed to swimming of rivers, with their riders upon their backs, which will often be necessary on service, and particularly in retreats. In the water a very small action of the hands is sufficient to guide a horse; and he must be permitted the free use of his head, and not be constrained by the bridle; the rider should stoop forward, sink himself in the water as much as possible, which will then sustain more of his weight, and guide and aid the horse with his hands.*

20. To accustom horses to Drums, Fire Arms, and other noises of War.

Patience and perseverance is necessary in training horses for the cavalry service, and great gentleness must be observed towards them at all times, but more especially in habituating them to the noises and sights incident to war.

It is an approved method to conquer the horse's fear of the sound of a drum, by beating it near him while feeding; and were they constantly accustomed to this and other noises of war, and to see fire and smoke immediately before feeding, they would soon be reconciled to them, and from the expectation of feeding, these would become pleasant as precursors of their food, and they would be led into the noise of battle without fear.

It is never proper to whip, or spur a horse up to a drum, or fire arm; for this may create an aversion which would be difficult to remove, and he would view them as precursors of chastisement.

*The French have made much use of swimmers in their recent campaigns. Companies of these troops, under the appellation of compagnies de nageurs, have been formed and great advantages have been derived from their services. Whole regiments, both of cavalry and infantry, are made to swim across rivers, in complete order of battle. General Moreau, in his despatches to his government, acknowledges himself much indebted to his corps of swimmers, for some of his exploits on the Danube and Rhine.
The best method of familiarizing a horse to the pistol, or other fire arm, is to place an old one in the manger with his food, where it should remain for some time; afterwards use him to the sound of the lock, first near him on foot, then mount and snap it over his head, and on each side, and show him the pistol. When he is reconciled to this, proceed to flash in the pan, then put in a small charge and fire it in various directions about him, and when on his back; then augment the charge by degrees, to what is commonly used. If the horse is uneasy and frightened, walk him back and forth, caress him, and by gentle means show him that he will not be injured. In a little time he will permit the pistol to be discharged from his back, over his head, on each side, and to the rear, without indications of fear.

To accustom horses to advance readily into the fire of musketry, a line of infantry should be drawn up, at some distance, with spaces between the files, sufficient for the horses to go through; a line of cavalry with open files should then advance on the infantry in a walk; the latter will open a scattering fire with blank cartridges, which they will continue, till the cavalry have passed through the intervals. The infantry may then go about and receive the cavalry in the same manner, on the trot; and thus the exercise should be continued, at different times, till the horses will advance freely on the gallop and at full speed, without deviating to the right or left. Great caution is necessary, on the part of the infantry, to avoid injuring the horses by firing when they are too close; to this the officers will pay the strictest attention.

Horses are sometimes disturbed at the motion of the sabre in the exercise. To reconcile them to this weapon, it should, at first, be swung slowly around the head, and presented on both sides, without touching any part. When he is somewhat reconciled to this, it may be carried round the head with rapidity, and whizz about the ears in all directions; but the utmost care must be taken that the sabre does not touch the horse a stroke would not soon be forgotten.

Most horses are frightened at the sight and smell of dead animals, and with difficulty are made to approach.
SABRE EXERCISE.

them. Cavalry horses must be divested of such fears, and taught to come boldly up to, and even to leap over the dead bodies of their fellow animals.

Such horses as are afraid of burning objects, should be rode about among lighted straw, brush, &c. both in the night as well as day time, and as their fears diminish, they should be brought closely up, soothed and cherished, till they are calm and easy. They will by such means, not only resolutely approach, but even trot and gallop over burning objects without fear.

The horses must also be accustomed to the waving of colours, the rattling of carriages, the shouts and huzza:s of the infantry, the roar of artillery and every thing that occurs in the field of battle.

The lessons on the riding ground must be continued till the men are fully acquainted with the whole of the drill exercise—the horses perfectly obedient to the aids of the hands and legs of the riders—stand still when mounted and dismounted—are ready in advancing on the walk, trot and gallop, and in stopping on their haunches at all the paces—will turn to the right and left, passage to either hand and rein back readily—leap standing and flying, and move every part of the body and limbs, as required. In fine, till the man and horse can reciprocally feel each other’s motions, comprehend each other’s designs, and, by a kind of mutual effort, act as one body.

In drilling young horses, great assistance may be derived from a few old troop horses that are steady and thoroughly instructed in the necessary movements of the drill, troop and squadron.

THE SABRE EXERCISE.

The sabre exercise is a most important part of the drill; if well understood, it gives a horseman, especially in single combat, a decided advantage over one that is unacquainted with its principles.

This exercise is divided into cuts, guards, thrusts and parries. The cuts are designated by the numbers one, two, three, four, five and six, and when executed collectively, are called the assault. The guards are eight; five are for the protection of the rider and horse in front, the other three for defence when retreating from an ene-
The principal one is distinguished by the term guard; it protects the head and shoulders of the horseman in front, and affords greater security and is more extensively used than any other. From the guard most of the movements of the sabre will commence. The other seven guards are distinguished by the term protect; that which covers the back part of the head, is generally called St George's guard. The thrust, or giving point against cavalry, is principally confined to the pursuit, where it can be applied with effect and without risk; but against infantry it is used also in advancing, with great security and facility. The parry is used as defence against the bayonet of infantry, as well as against cavalry thrusts.


In executing the cuts against cavalry, the action of the wrist and shoulder directs the blade, without bending the elbow. Four of the six cuts are made diagonally, and two horizontally, and they may be made on either side of the horse, or part on one side, and part on the other.

In the exercise which relates solely to attacks against infantry, the recruit may bend his elbow to take a sweep, by which he will be able to give his cuts with more effect, and this may be securely done, for the arm is not exposed in the contest.

In the first lessons the exercise is taught with most facility on foot. If several recruits are instructed at once, they should be drawn up in a rank entire, with suitable intervals between the files, and one or more expert flegelman placed in front to regulate the time and motions.

The recruits having assumed the position described in the foot drill (Section 1.) at the command attention, must be taught to draw and return sword as follows.

Draw—Sword!

1. Bring the right hand, with a sharp action across the body, putting it through the sling, over the left arm, giving the hand a couple of turns outwards, to fasten it to the wrist, and grasp the hilt of the sword, and look at the flugelman.

2. Draw the sword from the scabbard, with a full extended arm, turning up the blade perpendicular, bring
the stirrup of the hilt even with the chin, the back of the hand outward.

3. Bring down the sword before the right side of the body, till the hand is on a level with the elbow, raising the bridle hand at the same time, to the same level; the elbows to be close to the body, the blade perpendicular, the wrist a little rounded, and the edge in the direction of the horse's left ear. This position is called the carry.

*Slope—Sword*

Raising the sword arm a little, distend the three last fingers, and let the back of the blade fall back to the hollow of the right shoulder, the edge directed to the front, the thumb and root of the fore finger grasping the hilt of the sword, and the arm square across the side of the body.

*Carry—Sword*

Close the three last fingers, grip the hilt, and bring down the blade perpendicular, lowering the hand a little at the same time, and place the sword in the position of the carry.

*Poise—Sword*

Bring up the sword directly before the right eye, the upper side of the hand level with the eye, the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, and elbow to the body.

*Carry—Sword*

With a brisk motion lower the sword to the carry.

*Return—Sword*

1. Carry the hilt to the hollow of the left shoulder, the back of the hand to the front.

2. Drop the point of the sword close down by the left shoulder, directing the eyes to the scabbard, guide it into the opening and thrust the sword down till the hand is level with the elbow.

3. Thrust the sword home to the hilt, with a smart motion, untwist and quit the sword knot, and bring the hand down the right side.

The recruit must be very attentive to the flugelman, and endeavor to time the motions with him; the latter will therefore make the proper pauses between the motions, and perform them distinctly, and with spirit, but by no means in a hurry.

To give the recruit a correct idea of the different cuts, 

f 2
he should be placed, with his face towards a wall, on which a circle of about two feet diameter is described with chalk. This circle should be as high as the face, and crossed by three lines, one horizontally, the other two inclined so as to divide the circle into six equal parts, and consequently forming angles at the centre of 60 degrees. The extremeties of these lines must be numbered 1, 5, 3, 4, 6, 2, beginning on the right of the vertical point A, Fig. 6, Plate 1. The lines represent the direction of the cuts: the first is made from 1 to 4, the second from 2 to 3 downwards; the third from 3 to 2, the fourth from 4 to 1, upwards; the fifth from 5 to 6, and the sixth from 6 to 5, horizontally.

Swords are now to be drawn, placed at the carry, and the recruits put through the following exercise, by command from the drill instructor.

Prepare—to Guard!

With a quick motion bring up the extremity of the hilt to the pit of the stomach, the back of the hand outward, and the blade perpendicular, touching the peak of the helmet; at the same time the left hand must be brought up and placed under the sword hand, the fingers clenched and resting on the belly. This position of the left hand must be retained throughout the exercise.

Guard!

Dart out the arm the full length to the front, dropping the point to the left, nearly down to a level, the ears of the hilt in the direction of the left ear of an antagonist in front, the edge a little depressed, and the side iron of the hilt, in front of the knuckles, to guard them.

Note.—In this position the arm serves as a pivot round which the sword turns independently of any other power, than what is derived from the wrist and shoulder. In opposing-cavalry the utmost care must be taken to prevent the elbow from bending, which would expose the sword arm to their cuts.

Cut—One!

1. By the action of the wrist turn up the blade from the guard to the right, passing the vertical line, and retire the point towards the right shoulder, to gather a sweep.

2. Make the cut, by the action of the wrist, diagonally to the left, in the direction 1, 4—see Fig. 6.
3. Turn the wrist inward, dropping the point down to the left so as to bring the blade diagonally across the body, the edge outward.

4. Turn the wrist back, bringing the blade round towards the face, and passing it near the bridle arm, come to the guard.

Cut—Two:

1. Retire the point till it comes perpendicular over the left elbow, the blade elevated about 60 degrees.

2. By a motion of the wrist, make the cut downward to the right, diagonally from 2 to 3.

3. Turn the hand to the right till the back is under, and the seam of the sleeve upward; relax, at the same time, the three last fingers, gripping the hilt with the thumb and forefinger, and drop the blade in the direction of the diagonal 2, 3, the point down.

4. Turn the hand to the left, carry the blade with a sweep round the right shoulder, over the head, to guard.

Cut—Three:

1. Turn the hand over to the right till the palm is uppermost, relaxing the grasp of the three last fingers so that the blade will be in the direction of the line 3, 2; the point down, and carry back the point towards the right side to gather a sweep.

2. Cut diagonally upwards to the left, from 3 to 2, by the action of the wrist and clench of the fingers.

3. Turn the back of the hand up, and bring the sword to the guard.

Cut—Four:

1. Drop the point so as to bring the blade diagonally across the body, the point retired within three or four inches of the left elbow, the edge forward.

2. Cut upwards diagonally to the right, from 4 to 1, by turning up the wrist.

3. Turn the back of the hand, to the right, and the point in a circular motion round towards the head, and come to the guard.

Cut—Five:

1. Turn the hand and sword over to the right till the blade is horizontal, retiring the blade a little towards the right shoulder, the edge outward.

2. Cut horizontally to the left, from 5 to 6, by turning the hand inward.
3. Turn the hand over to the left and bring the sword back to the guard.

Cut—Six!
1. Retire the point towards the left shoulder, sinking it a little below a level and distending the last fingers.
2. Cut horizontally to the right, from 6 to 5, by turning the wrist and contracting the fingers.
3. Turning the hand over to the right, swing the blade round over the right shoulder and come to the guard.

Prepare—to Guard?
Turning up the blade perpendicular, bring the hilt into the pit of the stomach, to the prepare to guard.

Slope—Sword!:

As already explained.

Remarks. In performing the cuts, the fingers and wrist must be kept flexible, the sword being held principally by the thumb and fore finger. In cuts against cavalry, the action of the wrist and shoulder gives the impetus, without any bending of the elbow; the edge must be carried exactly in the direction of the cut, the knuckles leading and coinciding with the direction. This is a point of considerable importance, and if not regarded, the stroke may be made upon the flat of the blade and shiver it to pieces. In executing the cuts, if the sword becomes irksome from its weight, as it generally does to recruits, it may be brought to the prepare to guard at the completion of each cut, in which case it will be necessary to return to the guard, before commencing the next cut.

When the recruits have attained precision, in performing the cuts, by pauses, they must execute them so as to make but one movement for each; they will then make the whole six collectively, without returning to the guard at the end of each cut. This is called the assault, and is performed as follows.

Prepare—to Guard! Guard!
Assault! six movements.

1. Turn up the hand and blade to the first position of the first cut, and cut one.
2. Turn the hand and sword to the left, placing them in the first position of the second cut, and cut two.
3. Turn over the hand, carrying the blade to the pos-
sition to cut three, and make that cut.

4. Place the hand and sword in the position to cut four, by turning the hand to the left, and cut four.

5. Turn the hand and sword over to the right, place the sword in the first position for cutting five, and make that cut.

6. Shift the hand and sword over to the left, into the first position of the sixth cut, make cut six, and continue the motion, turning the hand over to the right, till the sword swings round the right shoulder, to the guard.

Prepare—to Guard! Slope Sword†

Note. In the assault, it is observable that each cut naturally leads on to the next succeeding one, by which the cuts, when quickly executed, are accelerated, by partaking of the momentum of the sword.

22 MODES OF PROTECTING THE MAN AND HORSE.

The recruits are still to be exercised on foot in open files.

Prepare—to Guard! Guard†

Left—Protect!

Carry the sword arm briskly to the left, the full extent of the arm, the elbow continued straight, raising the sword to a perpendicular, the edge forward; at the same time turn the head and eyes, to accord with the direction of the sword, the left hand continuing on the belly.

Note. It is to be observed as a general rule, that the sight is always to correspond with the movement: or in other words, the recruit is to look towards his sword hand, when exercising.

Right—Protect!

Pass the arm rapidly to the right, keeping the blade perpendicular, the elbow straight, and fix the hand in the level of the shoulder.

Prepare—to Guard! Guard†

Horse near side—Protect†

Drop the point downward, a little to the left of the front, the arm extended, edge forward and the sword in a position that will cover and protect the left side of the horse's head, on the side of the left ear.

Horse off side—Protect!

Raise the blade perpendicularly over the right hand.
and briskly carry it to the right, to a point to which the arm extended will reach, on the right side of the horse’s right ear.

This is similar to the right protect, excepting that the head is more forward and the body a little inclined in the direction of the off ear.

*Prepare—to Guard!*

**Note.** The preceding modes of protection are used in advancing, or receiving the attack in front; the following are for defence in retiring.

**Guard!**

*Bridle Arm—Protect!*

1. Carry the sword arm in a horizontal direction to the right; a quarter of a circle, the edge leading, and raise the blade to a perpendicular by turning the hand to the right.

2. Raise the sword and carry it over the back part of the head, and extend it down the outside of the bridle arm, over the shoulder, the edge to the left and the hilt resting on the top of the helmet.

**Note.** In practice these are performed in a continued motion.

*Sword Arm—Protect!*

Without sinking the sword hand from the last position, or moving the sword arm, swing the blade, by turning the hand outward, round the outside of the sword arm, the blade nearly perpendicular, with the edge outward; the hand may be a little raised withal.

*St. George’s—Guard!*

By the action of the wrist, turn up the sword into a horizontal direction, over the top of the helmet; the edge up, the point to the left, the middle of the blade over the centre of the helmet, and the sword in the direction of the shoulders.

**Rear—Cut!**

1. Turn the body and head to the right, as far as possible, avoiding however too much constraint, or any movement on the ground; at the same time carry the blade powerfully back, turning the edge into the same direction, making a cut straight out to the rear with extended arm, similar to the sixth cut to the front. The sword must descend a little, and the body incline back at the stroke.
2. Turn the hand to the right, by a motion of the wrist and sweep the point of the sword over the left shoulder and head, to the guard, and immediately to the prepare to guard, and slope.

Note. In practice, the cut to the rear and motion of the sword back to the guard, is executed in one continued movement, making a full semicircle. It is used in all cases where the retiring guards are necessary, and if well applied against a pursuing enemy, who is not extremely cautious, is given with great effect.

23 Modes of Giving Point, Parrying, and Cutting Against Infantry.

Prepare—to Guard!

Left—Give Point!

1. Raise the sword hand nearly to the level of the ears with a bent elbow and drop the point, the forefinger and thumb distended, and bring the pomme11 of the hilt into the palm of the hand; the sword in a diagonal direction across the front, directed to an object towards the ground, the edge outward and the head turned to the left, to see the direction of the blade.

2. Thrust the sword violently down, the whole extent of the arm, in the given direction.

To the Rear—Parry!

1. Extend the sword arm toward the front, to gather a sweep, the edge still forward, and the blade so far from the body as not to touch the horse when mounted.

2. Bring back the sword with a strong stroke to the rear, carrying the back of the sword foremost, and continue the motion till the hand arrives at the outside of the left-ear, and the blade perpendicular.

The sword is now brought to the guard by making cut four, with a good sweep, passing so high as to escape the horse’s head: after which return to the prepare to guard.

Front—Give Point!

1. Face to the right and at the same time retire the sword arm back of the right ear as far as the arm will extend, dropping the blade forward horizontally above the peak of the helmet; the extremity of the sword in the palm of the hand, and edge outward.

2. Dart the sword to the front the full extent of the
arm, turning at the same on the left heel, to the left about.

Cut—Five!—Six!

Turn over the hand to the right, retire the blade, as in the first motion of cut five, and by a combined movement cut five and six, and return to the prepare to guard, facing to the right at the same time.

Right—Give Point!

1. Turn the head to the right without moving the body, at the same time bring the sword hand up to the right ear, grasping the pomme of the hilt in the palm of the hand, the back of the hand up, the edge to the rear and the blade projecting a little out from the body.

2. Direct the sword down the length of the arm, continuing the back of the hand up.

Rear—Parry!

1. Carry the sword forward to gather a sweep, and turn the edge of the blade up, and the back of the hand under.

2. With a smart action sweep the sword to the rear, the back leading, as far as the arm will permit and raise the hand to the height of the shoulders.

3. Come to the prepare to guard, by cutting horizontally to the front, taking care not to cross it.

Guard! On the Right—To Front—Parry!

1. Retire the sword arm horizontally to the right, and extend it to the rear as far as can be done with ease, at the same time turn up the sword perpendicularly over the hand, and bring the back forward.

2. With a strong sweep make the parry across the front to the left, depressing the point, after passing the front, continue the sweep round the rear, and rest the back of the blade upon the left shoulder, the back of the hand touching the left temple.

In this position, cuts two and one against infantry, are applied with great advantage. They are executed as follows.

Cut—Two! One!

Carry the edge vigorously over the horse's head, making cut two, with bent elbow, it being supposed against infantry.

2. Instantly shift the sword, bring it up and cut one, over the horse's head to the left. Then return to the guard and prepare.
SABRE EXERCISE.

Left—Parry!
1. Bring the sword hand into the hollow of the left shoulder, keeping the back of the hand forward and the blade perpendicular.
2. Drop the point to the rear, and sweeping a circle to the front along the near side, come to the guard.—Then to the prepare and slope.

24. SWORD EXERCISE ON HORSEBACK.

The drill will now be mounted and go through the exercise in six divisions of movements, by words from the drill instructor.

The drill will form a rank entire, with intervals of six inches from boot top to boot top, which will give about a yard to each file. The recruits will then tell off themselves into threes, from right to left, thus: the right man turns his head to the left and calls out right; the next man, centre, the third left; the fourth man right, next centre, sixth left, and so on throughout the rank. The instructor then commands

Draw—Swords!
Prepare—for Sword Exercise!

The centre and left man, of the right three, rein back, when the centre man is clear of the right man’s, or standing horse, he passes and covers in the rear; the left man continues reining back till clear of the centre man’s horse, then passages to the right and covers in the rear of the centre man: they are then in on file.

Rein Back—March!

The remaining centre and left men of each three, rein back, passage to the right, cover their right men and dress by the posted horses on the right. They now form three open ranks.

Right—Prove Distance!

The right men remain steady, the others extend their swords full out to the right, the back of the hand up, and the edge to the rear.

Prepare—to Guard!

Swords are brought to the prepare.

Front—Prove Distance!

The front rank remain still, the two rear ranks (that is, centre and left men) rising in their stirrups, give point to the front, with full extended arms.
SABRE EXERCISE.

Slope—Swords!

Note.—In proving distance, if a man on the right, or in front, is within the reach of the sword of another, the distance must be corrected, previously to commencing the exercise.

At first, the exercise must be performed slow, that the men may not slur the motions. When a cut is made on one side of the horse's head, the appui must be increased and the head pulled a little in the opposite direction; but by no means so far as to make the horse move his feet. In coming to the guard, it is a general rule to rise a little in the stirrups, but not entirely clear from the saddle, and to return to the usual seat at the slope.

Each division of movements commences with the prepare to guard, from the slope, and is succeeded by the guard; the prepare to guard always succeeds the last motion of the assault, and the sword is to be brought to that position, without waiting for a word or making the least pause, after the last cut is made.

First Division.

The drill, with swords drawn, in the position of the slope, and two flügelers in front of each wing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td>Rise a little in the stirrups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td>Make the six cuts and come to prepare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Assault!</td>
<td>Look to the left, the arm extended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Left—Protect!</td>
<td>Do. the Right—do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Right—Protect!</td>
<td>Turn in toe of left foot, left shoulder to front, and turn to left as the point is given. And bring sword round left elbow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td>Settle down into the saddle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanation. The preparatory and closing move-
SABRE EXERCISE.

Movements, being the same in each division, are not numbered. The movements must be performed distinctly and timed with those of the flugelmen. The direction will determine which flugelman is to be observed, the head and eyes following the direction of the blade.

The assault and point, in this division, are offensive movements used in the charge; the latter is given in case the enemy retire. The protects are for defence, if he returns the cuts.

Second Division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Words of Command</th>
<th>Explanatory Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Assault !</td>
<td>Come to prepare, at last cut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Guard !</td>
<td>With one movement,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bridle Arm—Protect!</td>
<td>Turning to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sword Arm—Protect!</td>
<td>Turning left toe in and come to prepare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>St. George !</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Rear—Cut !</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope—Swords !</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanatlon. The attack commences with the assault; the protection of the arms is necessary to defend them, in case of retreat, against a pursuer on each side. The St. George defends the head, and the cut to the rear is offensive against a pursuer.

Third Division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Words of Command</th>
<th>Explanatory Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Assault !</td>
<td>Return to prepare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Guard !</td>
<td>Against the enemy’s cuts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Horse—near side—Protect !</td>
<td>Do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Horse—off side—Protect !</td>
<td>At the antagonist’s head and come to prepare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Cuts—one!—Two!—One!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SABRE EXERCISE.

6 Left—Protect! { For defence of the body.
7 Right—Protect! Do.
8 Prepare—to Guard! 
9 Front—Give Point! At the antagonist.
10 Cut—One! At his head.
Guard!
Slope—Swords!

Explanation. The antagonist is supposed in front; the horse's head is attacked and defended.

Fourth Division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td>With force, to parry a bayonet!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td>Two to left, one to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>On Right—Front Parry!</td>
<td>Enemy on the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cuts—Two! One!</td>
<td>Quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Right—Give Point!</td>
<td>Enemy on left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td>Bring sword over the head to the right, and cut three; and over to left and cut four.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Left—Give Point!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cuts—Three! Four!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope—Swords!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanation. This division represents an attack upon infantry, in a narrow pass, who are supposed to occupy both sides. The parry is to force off the bayonets and is followed by cuts, on opposite sides. The points and cuts must be applied with great quickness, till the defile is passed.

Fifth Division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td>Carrying the guard to left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Left—Cut One! Two!</td>
<td>cut one, two, on that side.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2  Right—Cut One!  
    Two!  
3  Left—Give Point!  
4  Prepare—to Guard!  
5  Right—Give Point!  
6  Cuts—Five! Six!  
    Guard!  
    Slope—Swords!

Explanation. This is the defence of one horseman against two; one on each side. The cuts and points are applied on both sides, as the enemy come up to the attack. The sword arm must be kept well up, as it is supposed to be acting against cavalry; and in practice the movement must be quick.

Sixth Division.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Words of Command</th>
<th>Explanatory Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Right—Give Point!</td>
<td>On off side and shift the sword to the hollow of left shoulder, blade up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cuts—One! Two!</td>
<td>With a strong effort making a full circle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Left—Parry!</td>
<td>Sword well to left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Left—Protect!</td>
<td>In the direction of the horse’s left ear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Right—Protect!</td>
<td>From the protect without coming to prepare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front—Give Point!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prepare—to Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guard!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slope—Swords!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanation. This division is for an attack on the near side of a retiring enemy in speed; and the modes necessary for defence. No. 1 and 2 are offensive, against the enemy on the right. No. 3, 4 and 5, defensive; the right protect is made on near side: by checking the horse the opponent is supposed to pass by, on which the point is given at his back.
25. Exercise by Flugelmen.

The drill being thus far instructed, by separate words of command, must next go through each division of movements by one command for each, regulating and timing their motions by flugelmen.

Attention! Sword Exercise—In Divisions!
First—Division!

The whole come to the prepare to guard, then guard, and proceed through the first division, and return to the slope, without any other word. After a small pause, the instructor commands

Second—Division!

The whole proceed through the second division, and come to the slope as before. In this manner the other divisions are executed, the recruits carefully governing themselves by the flugelers.

The drill will now form up into a rank entire, as follows.

Form Rank Entire—March!

The centre and left files, (that is, the two rear ranks), move briskly up, and form one rank, carefully dressing, with the right files.


To acquire a firm seat on horseback and a habit of using the sword skilfully, it is necessary to drill the recruits in squads of 16 or 18 men, in moving on a circle described on the ground. This circle should be about 50 yards in diameter, and distinctly marked with wetted lime, or other white substance.

The exercise is performed on the walk, trot and gallop, round the circle, to the right and left; the distance of a horse's length to be preserved between the horses. At the completion of each division, the drill should be brought to a halt, and again put in motion by the word for the next division. Having gone through the six divisions, the drill will go about and perform the same in the opposite direction. If they do not perform precisely in the same time, it is of no great consequence, the object being to attain a firm seat in the movements. Care must be taken that the horses lead with the proper foot, or do not gallop false.
27. **Exercise on a Right Line, in Speed, by Single Men.**

The drill is to be drawn up in a rank entire; with an extent of level ground in front equal to 200 yards. The instructor will place himself about the middle of the ground, out of the line on which the recruits advance, previously directing a non-commissioned officer to take post on the right of the drill, to give the command as follows.

*Sword Exercise—At Speed.*

**First—Division!**

The right man, advances on a trot, directly to the front, comes to the prepare, then guards and goes through the first division, putting his horse into a brisk gallop. When he has completed the division, he slopes sword, falls into a trot, circles to the left about and halts, facing the left flank of the drill at the extremity of the ground previously pointed out. At the repetition of the command *First Division!* the second man advances and executes the first division, in the same manner, circles round to the left and forms on the left of the first man, posted at the extremity of the ground. In the same manner the remaining recruits go through the movement in succession, and form with the men already posted. They are next directed to perform the *second division,* by returning on the gallop, in succession, to the original ground, and forming as before.

Thus the exercise is to be continued till the six divisions are performed by passing back and forth over the same ground. The instructor must carefully watch over the movements and correct any errors. If the exercise is too fatiguing for the horses, it may be divided and performed on different days.

28. **Charging at the Ring.**

A post must be erected, with an arm projecting at right angles, about two feet: at the extremity of the arm must be fixed a hook, or a cotton thread, on which is to be suspended a ring of iron, three or four inches diameter. The arm should be about eight feet from the ground; the ring the height of the sword when the point is given on horseback.

The drill is to draw up facing the post, about 50
yards from it. The right man is then ordered to advance on the trot; having proceeded 10 yards, he rises into a canter, leading with the off leg, and brings his sword to the prepare to guard. The speed must be increased on coming near the post, and the sword brought to the guard: at a short distance the recruit gives point to the front, and, looking at the ring, thrusts at it, passes the post on his right, and instantly comes to the sword arm protect, then to the guard and slope. Passing the post about 40 yards, he will circle round and halt: The remainder of the drill proceed in the same manner, and form on the left of the first man. The drill will then return, in succession, to the original ground, passing the post on the left, with a thrust, coming instantly to the bridle arm protect, and then to the guards and slope.

A person should be placed near the post to replace, or put up a new ring, when one is taken off.


A post is also necessary in this exercise; it should be seven or eight feet high, and in the top, a perforation for inserting a twig of soft wood, 10 or 12 inches long, on the top of which must be placed a ball of soft substance: cloth stuffed with wool, a potato, or large apple, will answer the purpose.

The same range is necessary as in charging at the ring, and the drill is drawn up in a similar manner. At the command forward trot, the right man advances on a trot; having arrived within 20 yards of the post, he puts the horse into a canter, leading with the off leg, rises in the stirrups and guards; when within reach of the ball, he will cut one at it, and instantly protect the sword arm, and pass on to the end of the ground, guard, slope, come about and halt. The other men perform the same, come about and halt on the left of the first man. They will then return to the original ground in the same manner, giving different cuts, and thus the exercise may be continued, passing on different sides of the post, till all the cuts are given.

The men must be instructed in the most efficacious modes of making the cuts; dexterity will have more effect than strength; the drawing stroke is the most powerful with the scimitar blade, and the cut should be
made near the centre of the weapon, by, drawing it thence to the point.

The charge at the ring and giving edge, "often repeated and properly performed, not only instructs the recruit in the use of the sword, but confirms him in his seat, and practices him in conducting and managing his horse. They are also most excellent lessons for his horse, by accustoming him to gradations of pace, and moving quick and well on his haunches."

30. ATTACK AND DEFENCE.

To instruct the recruit in the positions necessary for defence, according to the different points from which he may be assailed, the instructor will approach on the near side behind, and walk his horse round that of the recruit, with his sword at the guard, ready to attack or defend. On his approach the recruit will come to the bridle arm protect; and as the instructor advances, he will carry his sword forward to the horse near side protect, then to the guard, which he will continue, turning his body to the right as the instructor gains the off side; when he gets a little to the rear, reverse the sword, by turning it over to the sword arm protect; then gradually raise the blade to the St. George, which continue till the instructor gets to the left side in the rear, when the sword must again be brought to the bridle arm protect, and thus he protects himself and horse in every direction.

The instructor will now advance on the front of the recruit and commence offensive movements, making use of the guards necessary for his own defence, against the retorts of the recruit, and passing round by the off side again, to the front, as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offensive by the Instructor</th>
<th>Defensive by the Recruit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cut one at the horse's head, near side.</td>
<td>Defend with near side protect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut two at horse's head, off side.</td>
<td>Horse off side protect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut one at recruit's face from off side.</td>
<td>{ Left protect, on off side, and retort with cut three, at opponent's wrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parry cut three, by sinking the guard.</td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ATTACK AND DEFENCE.

Cut one at the thigh or body, off side.
Parry cut six with right protect.
Cut one at sword arm.
Cut two at bridle arm from the rear.
Give point at the back, near side.
Cut one at back of head, near side,
Cut two at the face, near side.
Cut one at horse's head, on near side.

Right protect, resting the hilt on the knee; then return cut six at opponent’s neck.
Come to sword arm protect.
Bridle arm protect.*
Left parry.†
Left protect.
Right protect, on near side of horse.
Horse near side protect, and retort with cut six, at opponent's sword arm, pressing the horse to the left, and give point at the back.‡

Note. Every movement in the attack and defence is to be made immediately from the position preceding it, without previously coming to the guard.

The drill may now be drawn up in two ranks, with open files, and advance on each other alternately, attacking and defending; the instructor pointing out the movements previously to the commencing the exercise. The recruits may also attack and defend, selecting their own modes, as their judgment may dictate; but this must not be suffered till they have acquired a considerable degree of perfection, nor without the instructor to oversee the exercise.

31. ATTACK AND DEFENCE IN PURSUIT.

Two men are supposed to be engaged, while moving in the same direction, the right hand horse a little in advance of the other.

*In changing to bridle arm protect, with the left leg throw the croup of the horse quickly to the right, to prevent the opponent from attacking in the rear.
†Come to the position of the left parry, by dropping the hilt to the left shoulder, the instant the opponent menaces with the point.
‡The attack is then changed, the assaulted becoming the assailant.
PISTOL EXERCISE.

Attack by left Man.
Guard.
Right give point at small of the back.
Cut one, at back of head.
Cut two, at the face.
Cut one, at horse's head, near side, pass the antagonist, guarding the sword arm, and carry the sword round the rear to the left arm protect, as the antagonist gets to the left, and commence defensive movements.

Defence by right Man.
Bridle arm protect.
Left parry.
Left protect.
Right protect on near side.
Horse near side protect, & return cut six at opponent's sword arm; check the horse and let the other pass, inclining to left to gain his left side, give point at his back: he then becomes the defender.

The attack and defence may thus be continued, each alternately becoming the assailant. It should be executed at first in the walk, then the trot, and lastly at speed.

In an encounter every weapon excepting the bayonet, should be parried with the edge of the blade; and it should be an invariable rule not to suffer the antagonist to disengage his blade immediately after a parry, unless it be to make an offensive movement.

For attack and defence the recruits should be furnished with old worn out swords, that they may not injure those furnished for service.

32. EXERCISE OF THE PISTOL.

Previously to the commencement of the exercise the instructor cautions the drill to prepare for pistol exercise, on which the recruits unbutton their holsters and boxes.

Draw—Pistol!

1. Seize the grasp of the left pistol, with the right hand, the back turned towards the body, and over the bridle arm.

2. Draw the pistol from the holster and rest the butt upon the right thigh, the barrel up and a little inclined forward.

Prime—and Load!

Turn the bridle hand a little forward; drop the pistol into it, and grasp it with the reins forward of the lock;
with the right thumb push forward the hammer, the-fingers clenched, seize a cartridge, by turning up the box cover, and between the thumb and fingers carry it to the mouth and bite off the top, covering it with the thumb; carry the cartridge to the pan and prime; with the last fingers shut the pan, and with the left hand, turn up the barrel, pour the powder into the muzzle and force in the paper and ball; seize the ramrod, with the thumb and fore finger up, and draw it half out of the pipes; backhanded seize the rod, draw it out, place it in the barrel, and with the thumb and fore finger ram down the charge; draw out the rod, turning the hand to the left, and enter it into the pipes; shift the hand, force the rod home with the palm, grasp the handle of the pistol and bring it to the advance on the right thigh.

Make—Ready!

Drop the pistol into the bridle hand, cock it with the right thumb, seize the grasp and bring the pistol to the advance.

Aim?

Bring up the pistol before the right eye, lower it with extended arm and sight along the barrel, with the right eye, at the object to be fired at.

Fire!

Draw the trigger, and immediately sink the pistol in the bridle hand; with the thumb and finger half cock and proceed through the loading motions, as above described, and come to the advance.

Make—Ready!

Cock as before, and return to the advance.

Right—Aim!

Present the pistol about 45 degrees to the right of the horse's head, and sight along the barrel.

Fire!

Fire, half cock and proceed through the loading motions and return to the advance.

Left—Aim!

Present the pistol 45 degrees to the left, over the bridle arm, turning the body and head in that direction.

Fire!

Fire, load and return to the advance.
PISTOL EXERCISE.

Make—Ready!

Rear—Aim!

Turning the right shoulder to the rear, raise the pistol, carry it back and present directly to the rear.

Fire!

Turning to the front, bring the pistol over the shoulder to the bridle hand, load and come to the advance.

Return—Pistol!

With the bridle hand turn back the holster cap, place the muzzle into the holster, over the bridle arm, and thrust the pistol home. Care must be taken not to cock the piece by catching the edge of the holster.

Note. The right pistol is drawn and exercised in a similar manner; but this must be kept in reserve, and not to be resorted to except on pressing occasions. When it becomes necessary to use the other, after the left is discharged, the command must be given, Return and draw right pistol! It is then drawn, fired and returned like the other.*

33. Firing with the Sword Drawn.

The sword is supposed to be at the carry, and it is necessary suddenly to use the pistol.

Draw—Pistol!

Drop the blade of the sword down the left side of the horse’s neck, turning the edge up and the bridle hand forward, grasp the blade close to the hilt with the bridle reins; quit the hilt and sling, seize and draw the left pistol; drop it down to the bridle hand, pressing the butt against the body, and while the fingers remain under the pistol, cock it with the thumb.

Aim! Fire!

Fire and return the pistol, and instantly recover the sword, passing the hand through the sling.

Note. The pistol may be drawn, fired and returned with the sword depending from the wrist, by the sling; but the method above described is deemed preferable.

* In preparing cartridges for pistols, care must be taken that the balls, when covered with paper, are sufficient to fill the caliber; they should press very closely, or they will slide out when the pistol is returned into the holster.
THE FILINGS.

Filings are movements, by one or two files, to the front, flanks or rear: They are, at first, performed in extended files, and at all times with quickness. The riding ground is an eligible place for the first lessons. Ten or twelve recruits are to be placed in one rank, at open files, double a horse's length, well dressed with heads square to the front, and taught to move as follows.

34. Filing from Right and Left to Front.

From the Right—File to Front!

Heads and eyes are to be turned to the right.

March!

The right man moves directly forward on the walk, the others turn horses to the right and move in files, and when they successively arrive at the ground, from which the right man moved, turn with an advancing movement to left and follow the leading man, preserving the distance of a horse's length. The instructor will lead and put the drill into the trot, winding about in various directions. To form up he gives the command

On the Right—Form to Front—March!

The leading man shortens pace, the others turn a quarter to the left, and with an increased pace, move up by files, dress by the right, and halt by command. Filing from the left and forming up is executed in a similar manner. The commands are,

From the Left—File to Front—March!

On the Left—Form to Front—March!

35. Filing from Centre to Front.

From the Centre—File to Front—March!

Two centre files trot forward, the remainder turn to centre and move inwards till they meet, then turn successively to the front and follow the leading two, by pairs, conducted by the instructor in various directions.

On the Centre—Form to Front—March!

The two leading files shorten pace, the others turn outwards; the right flank men to the right, the left to the left, and, with a quickened pace, move up and dress by the centre, when the whole are halted by the instructor.

36. Filing from Right and Left to Rear.

The drill will file to the rear, from one or both flanks.
From the Right—File to Rear!

The right file turns to the right about, the remainder quarter turn to the right.

March!

The right file leads off, perpendicularly to the rear, followed by the others in succession, who will turn to the right on the ground from which the first marched.

Right About—Form to Front—March!

The leading man turns circularly about to the right, advances about a horse's length and halts; the others trot briskly round the rear of the right man and form on his left, dressing by him, facing the former front. Fig. 1, Plate 2, represents this movement.

Filing from the left to the rear and forming is executed by the following commands—

From the Left—File to Rear—March!
Left About—Form to Front—March!

37. Filings to the Rear from the Centre.

From the Centre—Retire by Files—March!

Two centre files advance on the trot about ten yards, turn outwards, retire round the flanks and close in together in the rear; in the mean time the other files turn inwards to the centre, then to the front by pairs, advance, turn outwards in succession, go round the flanks and follow the centre men. See Fig. 2—Plate 2.

Right and Left About—Form to Front—March!

The proper right centre file (now the left) turns circularly to the left about and advancing a horse's length halts; the files in his rear trot round his rear to their places on his right, halt and dress by the left. While the files of the right wing are making this movement, the proper left centre file turns circularly to the right about and halts, and the men in his rear trot round his rear and form on his left and dress by the right, the whole closing up to the centre: they are then fronting in their former direction and in the position A B Fig. 2.

38. Filings to a Flank in Open Files.

Right or Left—Turn!

The whole turn horses, the quarter circle, in the ordered direction.
March!

In open files the whole move at once, in single file, to the flank ordered.

_Halt! Front!_

Brings the drill to its former position.

The filings should also be executed at close files; the horses in such cases will lap on each other in the turnings, and move from their ground in succession. In all filings, half a horse's length, at least, is to be preserved between the horses, to avoid striking with the feet; and in movements at speed greater space will be necessary.

39. **Movement in open files, turn and change of direction.**

The drill, filing from the right at a walk, is ordered _Left—Turn!_

Each man turns his horse a quarter circle to the left by a progressive movement, dressing by the right. See Fig. 3, Plate 2.

_Forward—Trot! Canter! Halt!_

If the drill is large the dressing should be by the centre, otherwise by a flank.

_Left About—Turn!_

The whole go to the left about (as explained in section 12 of the drill) halt and dress.

_March! Trot! Canter! Halt!_

_Left—Turn! March!_

The whole are now in file, marching right in front, as at first.

_Left About—Turn!_

With a circular turn, go about to the rear, and march in that direction.

_Trot! Canter! Trot! Halt!_

_Left About—Turn!_

The drill is now in the position from which the movements commenced.

Note. While moving in file, on the walk, the recruits may be put through some of the divisions of the sword exercise, by command of the instructor—Thus: two drills in file, opposite to each other, may turn, one to the right the other to the left, and advance on each other, performing the exercise; one may go about and retire, acting upon the defensive while the other attacks.
40. Inclining.

This is an important movement and should be well understood by every man and horse. It is applicable to many of the movements and as it enables troops to present a front to the enemy, is safe, particularly in the formation and deployment of columns in progressive movements. It should be executed both in open and close files, on the walk, trot and canter.

The drill must be well dressed; spaces equal, and horses square to front, previous to the movement.

Right—Incline!

The whole turn horses to the right, on the fore feet, by pressing croupes to the left with the right leg: each horse will now be about half a neck behind the one on his right, and each man’s right knee behind that of the left, of his right hand man. The instructor will give the right horse the proper obliquity, and his rider two distant objects to march on, E F Fig. 3, Plate 1, and this horse is to regulate the movements of the whole.

March!

The whole move at the same instant, carefully dressing by the regulating file, who will march in the line of the objects E F. The horses must move parallel to given line B F and consequently parallel to each other, continuing to lap against their preceding files. The command Front! brings the horses to the proper front, on which they will move till ordered to halt.

Left—Incline! March! Front! Halt!

The incline to the left is on similar principles and requires no explanation.

The right incline is represented by Fig. 3, Plate 1. A B is the position of the files before the incline; C D the rank inclining in the direction of the objects E & F on an angle of 45 degrees. G H the files brought to the original direction by the command forward. In close files it is rather difficult to incline on an angle so large as 45 degrees; that of 35 is more generally used.

It is a common fault, in inclining, to turn the body too far towards the direction of the march. The shoulders should be kept parallel to the original position A B, otherwise the rank will loose its parallelism, by making a partial wheel, in the direction of the incline. To pre-
vent this it may be necessary to instruct the men to
dress opposite to the direction of the march, keeping
back the shoulder opposite to that direction.

OF WHEELING.

A rank that wheels is to be considered as an inflexi-
ble right line, moving round upon one of its extremities,
describing a portion of a circle. If one of the extremi-
ties is fixed, the wheel is said to be made on a halted
pivot; but if both extremities move, one faster than the
other, so as to describe concentric arcs, the wheel is
said to be on a movable pivot. Fig. 1, Plate 1, shews
the wheel on the halted pivot. Fig. 4, Plate 2, that on
a movable pivot. The flank opposite to the pivot is
called the wheeling flank. The dressings in the wheel-
ings, are outward to the wheeling flanks.

The wheelings are named according to the portion of
the circle described: Thus

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Quarter Wheel} & = \frac{1}{5} \\
\text{Half Wheel} & = \frac{1}{4} \\
\text{The Wheel} & = \frac{3}{4} \\
\text{About Wheel} & = \frac{5}{6}
\end{align*}
\]

From six to twelve files is a convenient number for
the first lessons; and they must form in close files, or so
as to feel each other's knees, but not to crowd and em-
arrass each other.

41. WHEELING ON A HALTED PIVOT.

Right—Wheel!

Heads and eyes are to be turned quickly to the left,
or reverse flank, excepting the right man's, which
must be turned to the right or pivot.

March!

The whole move circularly to the right, excepting
the right file, which turns on the horse's fore legs, which
are the pivot, by throwing his grump to the left, one
fourth of a circle; the horse on the wheeling flank (rots,
the others move faster or slower as they are further from
or nearer to the pivot, and the whole circle round to the
right, by turning the horses in that direction, with an
even front. When the quarter circle is completed, the
instructor commands,

Halt! Dress!

And the whole stop short, dress to the pivot, and
turn square to the front. See Fig. 1—Plate 1.

Left—Wheel!

The right man turns head and eyes to the left, all the rest to the right!

March!

This is executed on the principles already explained.

Halt! Dress!

The eyes and heads are then to be turned to the front. The rank will next wheel about, at the following command.

Right about—Wheel! March!

This wheel differs in no respect from those already explained, excepting that the movement is continued till the half circle is completed, and is made with a little more celerity: At the end of the wheel, the command Halt! Dress! is given, and heads and eyes turned to the front. The wheel to the left about is by the following command.

Left about—Wheel! March!

Halt! Dress!

The commands for the other wheelings are,

Right, or Left 

Right, or Left

Half Wheel! March! Halt! Dress!

Quarter Wheel! March! Halt! Dress!

If it be required to wheel portions of the circle other than what have been mentioned, the halt must be given when the required one is gone over. For example:—Let it be required to wheel less than the quarter circle; the command will be, Right or Left—Wheel! and the Halt! Dress! when the arc is completed.

If more than a quarter and less than half the circle be required, the command will be Right or Left about—Wheel! and the Halt! Dress! when the required wheel is finished. The quantity of the wheel, in all cases, is determined by the eye of the commander, and the wheel is performed with as much facility and accuracy as if known to the men.

General Rule for all Wheelings.

The men dress outward from the pivot, or centre of the circle, or the contrary way to the wheel, excepting the man on the reverse or outward flank, who dresses inward to the pivot, all the rest regulating their movements by the pivot and reverse men.
42. Wheeling on a movable Pivot.

This is generally performed on the march, by the following command:

If to the right,

Left Flank—Forward!

If to the left,

Right Flank—Forward!

The flank towards the pivot slacken pace, the reverse flank circles round with an increased pace, the reverse man only dressing towards the pivot, and the whole move round with an even front till the proper direction is gained: At the command Forward! the whole move to the front with an equal pace. Fig. 4—Plate 2, represents the wheel to the right on a movable pivot. On arriving at the line a c the division a e receives the command, Left Flank—Forward! and it wheels on the concentric arcs a d, e o, described about the point c, in the line on which the wheeling commenced, always pointing its flank to the central point c, as at b c, n c, and d c.

43. Wheeling on a halted Pivot when on the March.

If to the right,

Right—Wheel!

If to the left,

Left—Wheel!

The pivot man halts, presses the croup of his horse towards the reverse flank, and turns the horse on his fore legs; the reverse flank file, circles round, increasing pace, and dressing to the pivot; the other move the same way, dressing to the reverse flank, and moving with even front. When the quarter circle is completed, the command is given Forward! on which the whole advance directly to front.

44. Wheeling in two Ranks.

The drill must now be drawn up in two ranks, at the distance of a horse’s length, in close files, and taught to wheel in that order, by the same commands used for single ranks. The front rank f g (Fig. 2—Plate 1.) will be governed by the rules already given, and act in all respects as a single rank; the rear rank must incline
RANKS OF THREES.

outward, and cover away to the reverse flank, by pressing and turning the horses in that direction, as represented at de Fig. 2—making an inclined wheel.

The wheelings must be executed in the walk, trot and canter, and continued till the men and horses can perform them with facility. Moving over a greater portion of the circle than is required, is a common fault in wheeling. This is generally the error of the commander, who does not give the word to halt, till too late. On the march, the pivot flanks, especially in column, are apt to slacken pace before they arrive at the wheeling point, and begin the wheel too soon. Officers will carefully avoid this error, by keeping the pivots well up to the wheeling point.

The wheelings are most accurately, and with the greatest facility, taught on circles graduated to the several wheelings at the two ends of the riding ground.—The circumference and radii should be remarked with lime, sprinkled with water. Several circles may be drawn in this manner, and if the radii are made to contain as many yards as there are horses to wheel, the outward horse will be on the circumference, and the others will have their due spaces.

MOVEMENTS BY RANKS OF THREES.

The method of taking ground to the flanks and rear, by filing, has many and great defects: such as loosening and drawing out the troops into a long train of files; taking up much time and exposing them to defeat, if suddenly attacked. The movement by ranks of threes is expeditious and safe; it simplifies manoeuvres, enables troops or squadrons to move to the flanks or rear, in line or columns, with as much ease as infantry can by filing—is applicable to the formation and deployment of columns, which it renders easy and simple, and completes, in half the time, what may be done by filing, and without the least extension of the space occupied in line.—In short it obviates almost the whole of the difficulties which have hitherto embarrassed and retarded the movements of cavalry, and renders them as easy in the execution, as those of infantry.

The length of a horse upon an average is equal to the breadth of three when formed at close files; each
three then can turn on their own ground, without interfering with the adjoining threes, and therefore a line or column may turn in this manner, either to flank or rear, and move without any extension of its files and ranks.

The lesson may be taught in one or two ranks; in the first case there will be three, in the second six horses abreast, when wheeled to the flanks. The wheel by threes, to the right, in two ranks, is represented in Fig. 5—Plate 1. A. B. and C. D. are two lines drawn through the centre of each rank before wheeling; e e e the left files, o o o the right files, the dotted parallelograms represent the threes of the front rank.

Note.—There will be no spaces between the threes after wheeling, as shewn in the figure; openings are here left to exhibit the explanatory lines and references.

45. Wheeling and Marching to the Flank by Threes.

The drill is to be told off into threes in the manner described page 73; if there is an odd file on the left, it wheels with the last three; if two odd files, they wheel with a supposed centre horse:

Threes—Right—Wheel!

Right and left files of each three look to the centre file.

March!

The centre file of each three turns to the right a quarter circle, as described section 12; the right files rein back close to the right leg, and turn horses square with the centre horses; the left files closing both legs to the sides, move up, turn and dress by the files on the right. They are now facing to the original flank, and may be put in motion by the command, Forward—March! and must continue heads 'lose to the croup.

Halt! Wheel Up!

At this command the drill halts and each three wheel to the left, by a movement contrary to the wheel from line, form up and dress to the proper flank.

Wheeling and marching to the left, is executed by the following commands.

Threes—Left Wheel! March!
Forward—March! Halt! Wheel Up!
46. Movement to the Rear by Threes.

Threes About! March!

Each three wheel to the right about to the rear, on their own ground, on the principles explained in the last section. When the half circle is described, the command Halt! Dress! is given, and the whole halt and dress, facing to the rear. They are then marched to the rear as required, and brought to the original front by the command

Threes About! March! Halt! Dress!

Note.—The wheel about is always to the right.

The drill should also advance and retire by threes from the flanks and centre, and form up in various directions, as practiced in the filings. In considerable bodies the movements by threes will be found preferable to the filings.

The recruits having been instructed in all parts of the preceding exercise and movements, and acquired, in some degree, a mechanical habit of executing them, may join their several troops, to be instructed in the movements of larger bodies.

EXPLANATIONS, PREPARATORY TO THE MOVEMENTS IN TROOP AND SQUADRON.

47. Formation and Deployment.

According to the military acceptation of the term, formation signifies the arrangement of a body of troops on parade, agreeably to prescribed rules. Cavalry are usually formed in two ranks with a space between them, more or less, according to the order observed. If the space be equal to the length of a horse, the ranks are said to be at close order; if equal to that of three horses, it is called open order. The former is observed in the movements, generally, the latter, when exercising on parade and receiving a reviewing officer. Another order is sometimes used, called close to the group, in which the rear rank is brought up as close as possible, and is necessary when the front rank is engaged, sword in hand, when the line is halted.

The verb to form, is applied to a variety of movements and changes, from one position to another: as to form to front and rear—form line—to form rank centre, form column, echelon, &c.
Deployment, implies the unfolding, spreading out, or displaying of a body of troops so as to extend their front. It is substituted by most modern writers upon tactics for display. A column is said to deploy into line, when the divisions move out to a flank and form on a line, with extended front. Deployment is also defined the flank march of divisions.

Deployments are generally made on a line parallel to the front of the column, but circumstances frequently require them to be made on oblique lines, either advanced or retired: these are called oblique deployments.

48. Files and Ranks.

In the formation, the men drawn up, one in the rear of the other, on a right line, constitute a file. In the formation in two ranks, two men make a file; in column a file consists of a greater number; it extends to the rear of the column, comprehending the men from front to rear. The front man is called the file leader.

By rank is understood the men formed on a line, abreast of each other, and this line is commonly at right angles with the line of files.

Rank and File signifies the corporals and privates of a corps.

49. Distance of Files.

In the movements and formations it is necessary to vary the spaces between the files, but the close formation is most generally used.

Close files is that where each man's boot top touches that of his neighbor, without crowding. At close files each horse occupies about 2 feet 8 inches.

Loose files is a space of four inches from boot top to boot top. Cavalry at loose files occupy about a yard for each file, and consequently the extent, in yards, of a troop, squadron or regiment at loose files, is equal to its number of files.

Open files is a space between the files equal to the breadth of a horse; or it is that space left by the files after doubling behind the right files, when at close files.

Double open files is the distance of a horse's length between the files.

50. Filing and Ranking Off.

By filing is to be understood marching from the front
GENERAL EXPLANATIONS.

Flanks or rear, with one or two men abreast. It is often practised by cavalry when passing along roads, defiles, over bridges and other narrow ways, and is executed with quickness; the files usually go off at a trot, and may increase to a gallop, where great expedition is required. When the files of a rank are turned and marched off to a flank, in single file, it is called ranking off.

The usual distance between the horses in filing, is half a horse's length; but when in speed the full length of a horse is necessary, to prevent striking. A body of cavalry in file, close to the croup, occupies about three times the extent of ground it does, from flank to flank, in close files.

51. Wheel up.

A command used when a body of cavalry are wheeled into threes and the line is to be formed to the original front.

52. Pivots and Reverse Flanks, in Column.

The extremities of a line or column are called the flanks, and are distinguished by the terms right and left.

The pivot and reverse flanks of a division have been described under the article wheeling, page 90. In column, with the right in front, the pivots are on the left, but when the left is in front the pivots are on the right.

The pivot is sometimes called the inward, and the reverse, the outward flank. When the inward flank, in wheeling, advances on the arc of a circle, less than that of the outward flank, it wheels on a moveable pivot, as in Fig. 3—Plate 6. The arcs A B and C D are concentric, about the point E, a little distant from the pivot flank. The wheel on a moveable pivot is frequently necessary in marching along a winding road, or when a close column changes the direction of its march to a new alignment. The pivots are generally the dressing points, whether in column or single division, excepting in wheeling, when the dressing is to the outward flank.

53. The Alignment, Points of Formation and Appui.

Alignment implies any thing straight, and the aligne-
ment of a body of troops is the right line on which it is formed. Without fixed objects the alignment is vague and uncertain, and in the movements of large bodies little precision can be attained without them. These objects are trees, clumps of bushes, buildings, hillocks, piles of stones, &c. and are called *points of formation.* Two are necessary for the base of an alignment, and by them and mounted officers it may be extended to any length. Thus: if the distant church K and the tree I, Fig. 1—Plate 4, be the base or points of formation, the point O, in the prolongation of K I, is easily found, by moving till the church and tree are seen in one. If the points of formation be at the extremities of a line, as the distant object A and corner of the house B, and it is required to form on the line between them, intermediate points must be found in the line. This is easily performed by two mounted officers, who must separate some distance from each other. Suppose them D and C, facing the line. D advances, and when C finds him in a line between the corner of the house and himself, he also advances, both in an even pace, looking at each other, C keeping D always between him and the corner of the house B; when D finds C in the direction of the tree at A he makes a signal to halt, and both instantly halt on the alignment B A in the intermediate points F E. Others may now aligne themselves, by the points found, and thus any number may be determined, and squadrons or regiments brought up in column and deployed on the alignment, with the greatest precision.

Distant objects are sometimes used to regulate the march of columns. In these operations the pivot officers are to be truly on the alignment and must occasionally glance their eyes at the distant objects by which they are governed. Thus: the columns G and H moving on the two directions L M and I K, the pivots being on the left flanks, are said to be *marching on alignments.*

When two objects forming the base of the alignment are in the rear of the column, and it is required to march on that alignment, it must be prolonged by advanced men called *markers* or *guides.* Suppose the column G to have passed one of the points of formation N in the alignment N P and two advanced objects are not to be found in the required direction, a marker gal-
Tops off to Q, in the alignment N P, for a guide to the column; a second marker may then go off to R, both placing their horses' heads over the line, so that the pivots of the column in passing, may just brush them. The alignment may in this manner be prolonged to any extent.

A point chosen in an alignment, at which a column is to halt, or the flank of a column or line is to be posted, is called a point of appui.* Thus: if the columns G and H marching right in front, were ordered to deploy on the alignment B A, where the right flanks enter it, the points a and c will be the points of appui, and the distant point B will become a point for correcting the formation, called the point of correction, which may be known only to the commander of the body deploying. The points of appui may be determined on an alignment in the manner those at F and E were found, as above described.

If it becomes necessary to take up an alignment suddenly, where but one object presents (suppose the distant chimney S) the commander will place a guide T, in such direction from the point S, as he deems proper; and quickly another at V in the prolongation of S T. The column to deploy will then move up to the point of appui T, and deploy on the alignment T V, the commander correcting the dressing on the distant point S, which may be unknown to the division officers.

All points of formation necessary in the movements of small bodies are determined by the adjutant, assisted by two, three, or more guides, well acquainted with the manoeuvres and accurate in judging of distances, quick in taking up alignments, and ready in every part of their duty. This party, called the division of appui, may be posted behind the flanks of the corps exercising, subject to the call of the adjutant, who will receive his directions from the commander, when and where to fix the points of formation required in any movement.

In the manoeuvres of the troop and squadron a rigid adherence to the points of formation and prescribed lines, is no farther necessary than to prepare them for executing the movements when acting in large bodies.

*Appui is French, and signifies stay, help, support.
54. **Serrefile.**

This is a rank of officers and non commissioned officers drawn up in the rear of a troop or regiment, when it is in line; their business is to attend to the rear rank and keep it up in action, and to face the officers who may fall in the ranks. On this important service too many cannot be employed. Without a serrefile rank young troops are very apt to give way and fall into confusion. In close column the serrefiles are posted in the rear of the column; in filing, or in the march by threes, in the rear of their divisions.

55. **The Column.**

A column is composed of the divisions, or any equal parts of a line placed behind and parallel to each other, the pivot flanks covering. The divisions must be formed in regular succession, from front to rear, or from rear to front, and retain the same numbers as when in line.

The wheel to the right or left, the quarter circle, by any of the divisions of a troop, squadron or regiment, forms a column; it is formed also by the flank march of divisions, into the rear of any particular division. If the column has two or three men only abreast, it is usual to say they are in file, or column of threes. When a column is formed close, as A B Fig. 2—Plate 4, it is said to be a close column; if the divisions have spaces between them equal to wheeling distances, the column is called an open column, as the shaded divisions 1, 2, 3, &c. Fig. 2—Plate 6.

When a column is in exact order, the ranks and files correctly dressed and ready for movement, it is called a column of manoeuvre; when on the march along a road winding about without being accurately dressed, the men at ease and out of the usual position, it is a column of route. The column of manoeuvre is generally composed of division; that of route has a smaller front, according to the nature of the road, and other circumstances connected with the movement.

56. **Echelon.**

The echelon formation is a column of a particular

---

*Serrefile literally signifies a closer up.

†The term is from echelon (French) the step of a ladder.
GENERAL EXPLANATIONS.

kind, in which the divisions of a squadron, regiment, &c. out-flank each other on a broken line, each division having its front uncovered, and, when on the march, moving on its own perpendicular.

The echelon is either direct or oblique. The direct echelon is formed by the perpendicular and successive march of divisions, to the front or rear; the oblique echelon by the wheel less than the quarter circle, by any parts of a line. Fig. 6—Plate 2, shows the direct echelon of divisions formed by the direct and successive march from the line a b; at division distance; the oblique echelon is exhibited by Fig. 7, and formed by the half wheel to the right.

The echelon is applicable to a great variety of movements. An extensive line may advance in this order, over broken ground, with as much ease as single divisions, and be ready to form up for an attack by a momentary operation. Any part of a line may be carried into action, and the other part kept back, or refused, till the effect of the first charge on any point of the enemy's line is determined, when the refused part may be bro't up; or it may retire covering the retreat of the other, if repulsed.

By the oblique echelon a line may be moved to the flank and front more securely and expeditiously than by inclining. The horses move at right angles with their proper front, which is the most natural march, and the line is again formed, either parallel or oblique to its original position, by a short and easy movement: and, should circumstances require it, a sudden change of position may be effected without the least embarrassment.

The direct echelon, when seen at a distance in front, is not easily distinguished from a continuous line, whether the divisions are retired from each other the length of their fronts, or more, or less, as shall be ordered. The oblique echelon presents the same appearances, but is of less extent, and the degree of wheel determines the distance of the divisions, and this will always be less than wheeling distance. When a change of position to a new alignment, perpendicular to the original position is required, the echelon is formed by the half wheel; if it forms an angle of forty-five degrees, the quarter wheel is sufficient, and it is a general rule in these movements.
to wheel half the angle which the new alignment makes with the old one. This angle is determined by the eye of the commander, and he who possesses a ready coup d'œil, will be able at all times to adapt his wheeling to the nature of the movement, without unnecessary delay.

The great variety of cases to which the echelon is applicable, cannot be here pointed out without extending the section beyond its due limits. They will be incidentally mentioned, as they occur in the movements.

57. TELLING OFF.

This is the method of designating the divisions of a troop, squadron, &c. and it is generally from right to left; but in some cases from the centre to the right and left. Squadrons are told off into half squadrons, divisions, sub-divisions, ranks by threes, and right and left files; troops into divisions, sub-divisions, ranks by threes, and right and left files. The operation is as follows. Having ascertained the whole number of files and divided it by the number of divisions required, begin on the right flank, count the number in the first division, and say to the left file, you are the left of the first division; to the next, you are the right of the second; count off the second division and say to its left file, you are the left of the second division; to the next, you are the right of the third, and so on through the whole; the divisions are then to be sub-divided. If after the division, there is a fraction left, it must be divided among the divisions. The method of telling off by threes, files, &c. will be given in the following part of the work.

The duty of telling off, appertains to the adjutant and sergeants, and the men will always recollect their places in the divisions, the number of their troop and squadron, and their designations as given by the person telling off.

When a troop, squadron, &c. is told off, the several divisions and sub-divisions may be proved, by drawing swords, or when drawn, by bringing them to the polis and rest, by the divisions successively.

58. THE WORDS OF COMMAND.

These are commands given by the officers, for performing the exercises and movements. They are divid-
ed into commands of caution and those of execution. The cautionary words are first given, and no movement commences till those of execution are completed; the former are used only as preparatives to what is to be executed: for example. The squadron will advance—
in Echelon of Divisions—March! all these words, except the last, are cautionary, serving only to point out the movement—caution the men to be ready and to remain without the least motion, till the command of execution, March! is given, on which the movement is to be executed without delay.

The commands are at all times to be given distinct and with spirit, that they may be heard throughout the line. For exercising a regiment or squadron, the voice must be more elevated than for a single troop; but care must be taken that it is not strained, which will produce hoarseness.

When a command consists of several words, it should be divided by proper pauses; and in words of more than one syllable, a strong accent must be placed on the last, particularly in the words immediately preceding the pause, which ordinarily must be, two seconds, and the same that is observed between the motions in exercise.

After troops have acquired a considerable expertness, the commands may be abridged by omitting some of the expletives. For example—The Regiment—will form column—of Division—by the Right—the Right in Front. This may be abridged thus:—Regiment—form Column—of Divisions—Right—Right in Front!

In the movements, the officers must be very attentive to the words of the commander, and repeat them to their several divisions when they are not instantly obeyed.

In extended lines, and when exercising in large bodies in brisk movements, it will always be necessary to repeat the commands: This is performed as follows.

By the commander: Half Squadron! each commander of division repeats, Half Squadron! Commander, Right Wheel! Commanders of division, Right Wheel! Commander, March! Commanders of division, March! The repetition must be very quick, and as nearly simultaneous with those of the commander as possible.

The cautionary commands in this treatise are separate.
ed by a dash, thus—; and following the words of execution is a note of admiration (!)—and both denote a pause of the same length.

59. Signals.

In the movements of extended lines and of detached parties, on the flanks and front, it is difficult to communicate orders by the voice; hence it has been found necessary to substitute signals. These are generally certain established sounds from drums, trumpets and bugles, or the discharge of a certain number of cannon. There are also other signals given by the voice, termed vocal signals, used as precautions against surprises; such as countersigns, paroles, watch-words, &c.

The signals of the trumpet and bugle, called demi-vocals, are best adapted to cavalry, light infantry and riflemen; they indicate instantaneously whether detached parties are to advance, halt, continue the pursuit of the enemy, or return to the main body. They are used also to regulate the duties of the camp and garrison, as well as to aid the voice in the exercises and field movements. In the latter, the commander of the corps exercising directs the signals to be given as cautions to the commanders of divisions and squadrons, who will instantly give the words of execution to their several commands.

The signals must be fully understood by the officers and non-commissioned officers, and always instantly obeyed. When given to detached parties they are to be repeated by them to advertise the commander that they have been noticed. Particular directions concerning the demi-vocal signals will be given in the subsequent parts of the work.

60. Standards or Colours.

The standard used by cavalry, is a piece of silk about one and a half foot square, on which is generally painted, or embroidered, the device of the state, the number of the regiment, brigade, &c. One side of the silk is attached to a lance eight or nine feet long. It is carried by a cornet, in the centre of the regiment or squad-
GENERAL EXPLANATIONS.

Ron; the lower end suspended by a leather boot; attached to the stirrup, the right hand holding the lance. The standard is used for a dressing point in the manœuvres, and a rallying point when the corps has been broken and scattered. The officers and men should know their standard at a distance, by a glance of the eye, that they may instantly repair to it when separated from it in action by any unfortunate accident; and to enable them to do this with facility, there should be a considerable distinction in those of different regiments.

The standards are usually deposited at the quarters of the commanding officer of the regiment, from which they are carried to the parade by cornets escorted by a few files. On a march they are usually cased up, ready to be unfurled in a moment.

Much empty ceremony is practised by some regiments, in receiving and returning the standards, which, to the real officer, is always highly disgusting. The attempt to induce a belief, that the colours are sacred, and deserve divine honors, is foolish, puerile and useless. It is enough that the soldier be taught to consider them important as the dressing and rallying points of his corps; that he must keep his place in line, or column, relatively to them; that the orders from his commander emanate from the point where they are posted, and that so long as they remain in their place the regiment is ready to act, under its proper commander, on every emergency. Let the honor and reverence of the soldier be paid to his commander; let him be taught to consider his orders as sacred; that implicit obedience is indispensable; that thereby harmony is introduced, discipline and order maintained, great exploits performed, and that the colours are only the emblems of these cardinal virtues of the soldier.

61. Dressing.

By dressing is to be understood the placing of the files in exact continuity of line. In small numbers, the men dress by each other, either to the right or left, by a small turn of the head and eyes towards the dressing flank: When the word dress only is given, it is to be understood that the straightening is to the flank to
which the men are looking, and, except in the wheelings, the dressing is generally to the pivot; but when it is in a different direction or the men are looking to the front, the word right, left or centre will be given, previously to the command to dress. In dressing the men are apt to stoop forward, by which the line is bent into a curve, concave to the front.

Dressing of considerable bodies is generally on determined points of formation, such as trees, buildings, or markers placed for the purpose. In all dressings on prescribed alignments, the men come into the line, with their eyes directed to the point of appui; and when they are dressed on the alignment their heads and eyes are to be turned square to the front. When regiments or squadrons come up successively into line, the flank of the last formed body is the point of appui for the succeeding one; the dressing in such cases is towards the point of appui and the correction of the line, by the commander, towards the distant point of formation. When a column deploys there are given two or more dressing points on the alignment: viz. the flanks of the first division, Fig. 1—Plate 5, and the guide B; when the second division comes up, its left flank is the appui for the next; and so on through the whole deployment, the guide at A serving as a point to correct the dressing. "No line can be said to be in a proper condition to meet, or march up to an enemy, without being well dressed, and without openings. Solid, compact and straight lines in forward movements are the nerves and sinews of immediate conflict; whereas unconnected movements produce confusion, are naturally weak and always tend to give superiority to the enemy."


By a change of position is meant the shifting of a squadron, regiment or line from its original position to a new alignment. These changes are either forward or backward to new parallel alignments, or to those that are oblique to the original position; the latter will either intersect the line, or its prolongation, beyond the flank.

Changes to new parallel alignments, to the front or
rear, are best executed by direct echellons of divisions or half squadrons, excepting where the distance is great, in which case, the change is more easily made in column. Changes to oblique alignements are executed by oblique echellons of divisions, or by columns. If made on a flank, to an alignement at right angles with the front, they are executed by breaking into column to the right or left, according to the hand towards which the change is to be made, and deploying on the line, as represented, Fig. 1—Plate 11, or Fig. 2—Plate 10, or, if backward on a flank, as Fig. 3—Plate 10.

Changes of position may be executed by a simple wheel of the line to the right or left, so far as to present a front parallel to the enemy; and where the front of the body does not exceed that of a troop, this may be a safe movement; but the wheeling of extensive lines is to be avoided as much as possible; for it is dangerous in presence of an enemy, particularly on uneven ground, where there will unavoidably be pressing and derangement of files. The change by a circular movement has another defect; the files contiguous to the pivot, who have but a small distance to pass over, will not arrive on the new alignement, nor be in a condition to receive the enemy sooner than those on the reverse flanks, who have to pass over a considerable extent, which must cause unnecessary delay.

These defects are remedied by echelon movements, in which the several divisions, acting independently of each other, are ready to form the line and commence the attack, at any point, by a momentary operation; and any part of the line may be brought up and commence the action, while the remainder may be refused, as circumstances shall require.

All changes of position must be executed briskly, and without the least derangement of ranks or files. The officers must keep an attentive eye over their several commands, march them up to the new alignement, and carefully observe that they do not pass over, or stop short of the line at the halt. Changes of position are sometimes termed conversions. If the change is equal to a quarter circle, it is called a quarter conversion. They are made on a flank, centre or any named division.
PART II.

63. CHANGE OF FRONT.

A change of front implies the shifting of a front to the rear by wings, companies, divisions, files, or threes, by successive movement, whereby those on the right take up the ground originally occupied by the left. A change of front may also be produced by putting the line about by threes, or wheeling about by divisions, or other convenient bodies, as represented in Fig. 7—Plate 10, but this produces an inversion of the flanks, and is not to be resorted to but in cases where an instantaneous change is necessary, as when the enemy, by a sudden movement get close into the rear, and there is not time to change front by other methods.

PART II.

FORMATION, EXERCISE AND MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

The exercises and movements in this part, are those necessary for the troop when acting independently of the squadron and regiment; and as the nature of our country, at present, requires but small corps in the field, it is deemed necessary to treat more fully of the movements of the troop than merely to prepare it for those in more extended lines.

1. ORGANIZATION OF THE TROOP.

The number of men constituting a troop, by the regulations of different armies, varies from about 30 to 100. The former number is evidently too small, and the latter too large, and neither admit of the divisions necessary in a troop or squadron, without inconvenient fractions and fronts too small, or too extensive. That number which will admit of a continued bisection, without a fraction, and each bisection of a division into three, still without
a fraction, is the most eligible for a troop of cavalry; regard being had to the extent of its front, as a constituent part of a squadron or regiment. The number 48 possesses these properties, perhaps more completely than any other. This number of men, formed in two ranks, gives 24 files, the half troop or division 12, the sub-division 6, and each is divisible into threes without a fraction, and at loose files the front will be 24 yards. A squadron of two such troops will contain 48 files, occupying a front of the same number of yards, and will constitute a managable and convenient body for manœuvre. But as a considerable number of men and horses are generally sick or absent, to insure 24 files for duty, a troop should consist of at least 60 rank and file, and there may be cases where it will be proper to enlarge the number, as where a troop is to act independently of the squadron, or on detachment; but in no case ought there to be a greater number than to constitute 48 files to a troop, which will require 96 rank and file fit for duty.*

The usual commissioned officers in a troop are, a captain, 2 lieutenants and a cornet; the non commissioned officers, 4 sergeants, one of whom must serve also as riding master, 4 corporals, a farrier and saddler, with two trumpeters or buglers.

2. Parade and Formation of the Troop.

When a troop forms on parade, a corporal is to be posted on the right of the ground, fronting in the required direction, with the trumpeter a few yards on his right, to serve as a point of formation in the alignement. At the trumpet signal, To horse, the men fall in on the left of the corporal, the tallest on the right and in reg-

*Half a dozen supernumeraries to a troop, furnished, in addition to the usual arms, with light broad hatchets, slung at the right side by belts over the left shoulder, would afford great assistance in cutting away high fences and other obstructions that frequently present themselves. These men are absolutely necessary in camp, and cannot be dispensed with on many occasions in the field.
PART II.

ular gradation of size to the left; the sergeants correcting such as misplace themselves. The files must be closed to loose files, that is four inches from boot top to boot top.

The rank is next to be told off into front and rear files from right to left; the corporal is front, the 2d file rear; the 3d file front, the 4th rear, &c. The command is then given

**Rear Files—Rein Back—March?**

The files designated by rear, rein back the length of a horse behind the front files, forming a second rank; the whole then passage to the right; close to the distance of loose files, dress by the right and turn heads square to the front. The men in the rear must cover behind those in front, the horses of each file standing on lines perpendicular to the alignment, and well balanced on their legs.

The troop is now to be told off into two divisions and four sub-divisions, and the officers posted in the front rank as follows: The first lieutenant on the right, the second on the left, and the cornet in the centre of the troop, each covered by a corporal in the rear rank. The sergeants form the serrefile rank, two horses' length in the rear of the troop, one sergeant in the rear of the centre of each sub-division; the trumpeters are in the same line, in the rear of the right flank of the troop. The captain's post is not stationary, but when exercising he will post himself about 10 yards in front of the centre. The saddler and farrier take post two horses' length behind the centre of the serrefile rank. The troop is now said to be drawn up at close order, in the position for an attack in speed. See Fig. 8—Plate 2, a a front rank; c c rear rank and corporal covers; s s serrefile rank of sergeants, with the trumpeters on the right. For exercise and manœuvre, the troops should also be told off into threes, and right and left files; in the former the officers to be included, when in the ranks. When two troops are to be drawn up in squadron, the right troop must be sized from the left.

3. **Opening Ranks and Files for Exercise**

Words by the commanding officer.
 Movements of the Troop. 

Rear—Rank—Open Order!

The covering corporal on the right of the rear rank reins back a horse's length into the rear of the rear rank, for a marker.

March!

The rear rank reins back till even with the marker on the right, halts and dresses, serresfiles falling back at the same time; the horses to be well balanced on their limbs: the officers at the same time advance four yards to the front, the coverers remaining in the rear rank, and the serresfiles the usual distance in the rear.

Prepare for Sword Exercise!

The centre and left files, of ranks of threes, in each rank, numbered 2, 3, Fig. 9—Plate 2, rein back; when the centre files get to the rear of the right files, numbered 1, they passage to the right and cover; the left files continue to rein back till they clear the centre files, then passage to the right and cover; the officers in front turning to the left about at the same time. The men are now in six ranks, the officers' posts in the front rank being vacant.

Right—Prove Distance!
Front—Prove Distance!
Slope—Swords!

These are explained in the drill, page 73.

The troop will now perform the sword exercise in divisions, by flugelmen, or by words of command, as described in the drill: after which the command is given,

To the Front—Form—March!

The left and centre files move quickly up and dress in two ranks a, b, c d, Fig. 9—Plate 2.

Rear Rank—Close Order—March!

The rear rank advances within a horse's length of the front and the officers return to their posts in the front rank, the cornet, by passing through the rank, turning about and moving up into his place in the centre.

The troop may also perform the exercise on the circle and line; charge at the ring and apply the edge, by ranking off from a flank, the front rank leading, on the principles laid down, sections 26—27—28 and 29, Part 1.
4. Dismounting and Linking.

The officers advance four yards to the front by the following command.

Officers to Front—March!

The troop is then told off into right and left files from right to left. Thus—the first file is right, second left, the third right, the fourth left, and so on through the troop.

Left Files—Right Double—March!

Left files, in each rank, rein back, passage, double behind their respective right files and cover; the troop forming four ranks.

Prepare—to Dismount! Dismount!

To the Front—Form! March!

Left files lead up their horses and dress.

Link—your Horses!

The whole face to the right about, and with the left hand bring the snaffle reins over the horses' heads; seizing them with the right, each man fastens them by a noose to the check parts of the bridle of his proper left file horse (now on his right) and faces about to the front. The officers advanced, move to their several places, dismount and link their horses, facing the troop: the sergeants and trumpeters go to the flanks of the rear rank, half to each, dismount and link.

To the Front—March!

The whole advance to the front, the men of the rear rank passing to the left of their file leaders' horses; the officers fall into their posts in the front rank and the sergeants take their places in the rear of their divisions. The farrier and saddler remain mounted with the horses, and take charge of them till the men return. When sufficiently advanced, the commander, who remains mounted, orders

Halt! Centre—Dress!

The whole close and dress by the centre.

The troop will now perform such exercises on foot as shall be ordered. If armed with carabines the manual exercise and other foot duty may be executed.

The foot exercises completed, and the troop formed in front of the horses, in open files, facing outward, receives the command,
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

To your Horses!
The whole face to the right about.
March!

On a quick step they move to their horses, (the rear rank passing the front rank of horses) unlock, and pass the reins over the horses' heads. The officers, sergeants, &c. returning to the post occupied previously to dismounting.

Left Files—Right Double—March!
The men rein back the horses, double to the right, face about, and take the position for mounting.
Prepare—to Mount! Mount!
The officers and sergeants mount with the men.
To the Front—Form—March!
Officers to Posts—March!
Officers return to their several posts in the rank.

THE WHEELINGS.

The wheelings are important operations, and must be well understood, by the men and horses. The principles laid down in the drill are applicable to the wheels in larger bodies. Files must be closed, ranks well dressed, officers at their posts, and serre files attentive to their duty.

The troop is wheeled entire to the right and left on the principles described in section 44, Part I.

5. Wheeling by Divisions.

Words by the commander.

Divisions—Right Wheel!

Left files of each division look to the right, the others to the left.

March!

Right files of each division turn to the right on the horses' fore legs, the riders throwing their croupus to the left; the others wheel to the right without crowding, or loosening files. No man must pass or move faster than his left hand man, nor break out of the rank. When the quarter wheel is completed, division officers command.

Halt! Dress!
PART II.

The whole halt, dress to the pivot, and turn heads and eyes to the front; division officers on the right, shift by the rear to the left flanks: the cornet takes post in the rear of the right division. Serrefiles wheel at the same time. See Fig. 10—Plate 2.

6. Wheel to the Left into Line.

Divisions—Left—Wheel into Line—March!
The divisions wheel a quarter circle to the left, as ordered, and receive from their respective officers the command

Halt! Dress!
The dressing is to the pivots: the officers take their former posts, by shifting by the rear.
Wheeling to the left by divisions, and again into line, is performed on similar principles. The commands are,

Divisions—Left Wheel! March!

Halt! Dress!
The officers take post on the right flanks, which are now the pivots.

Divisions—Right—Wheel into Line! March!

7. Wheeling by Sub-Divisions.

Words by the commander.

Sub-Divisions—Right Wheel—March!
The sub-divisions wheel on the right flanks, the quarter circle, and receive from their respective officers, the command

Halt! Dress!
The officers then shift to the pivot flanks, the sergeant in the rear of the third sub-division moving up to the left flank of that sub-division to command it; the cornet takes command of the second sub-division, posting himself on its pivot flank; the serrefiles remain in the rear of their respective sub-divisions. See Fig. 11—Plate 2.

8. Wheeling to the Left into Line.

Words by the commander.

Sub-divisions—Left—Wheel into Line—March!
The wheeling completed, sub-division officers command, *Halt! Dress!* and take their former posts.

The troop breaks into column of sub-divisions to the left, and wheels into line by the following words.

*Sub-divisions—Left Wheel—March! Halt! Dress!*  
The officers on the left shift to the pivot flanks as soon as the dressing is completed; a sergeant takes command of the third sub-division.  
*Sub-divisions—Right—Wheel—into Line—March & Halt! Dress!*  

9. Commands for wheeling other portions of the Circle.

The other wheelings are performed on similar principles, the officers varying the commands according to the portion of the circle to be passed over, as follows—

*Divisions—*or* Right—or* Half Wheel—  
*Sub-divisions—*or* Left—*March!  
*Divisions—*or* Right—or* Quarter Wheel—  
*Sub-divisions—*or* Left—*March!  
*Divisions—*or* Right—or* About—Wheel!  
*Sub-divisions—*or* Left—*March!  

10. Wheeling in succession, on a moveable pivot.

The troop in column of sub-divisions, advancing, the officer of the leading sub-division commands,

*Right*  
*or* Flank Forward!  
*Left*  

The sub-division wheels to the right or left, as ordered, on concentric arcs, by bringing forward the required flank, till the change of direction is obtained, when its officer commands,  
Forward!  

And it moves directly to the front. The succeeding divisions perform the same movement when they successively arrive at the ground on which the leading division wheeled.

*Note.* The wheelings should be executed at first at a walk, and afterwards on the trot and slow cantor.
PART II.

11. Inclining in Column, or Single Division.

The column at a halt, the command is given,

\[
\text{Column—} \begin{cases} \text{Right} \\ \text{Left} \end{cases} \text{ or Incline!}
\]

Each horse is turned to the right or left, as ordered, on his fore feet, into the required direction; touching and lapping against his next horse, those in the rear covering, in an oblique direction.

March!

The whole are to keep an equal pace, well closed with the front and parallel to their original position; at the command,

\[
\text{Column—Forward!}
\]

The whole turn square to the front, with a progressive motion, and move directly forward.

Halt!

If the movement is well executed the divisions will have their proper distances and parallelism, and the pivots will be correctly covered.

If the column be on the march, when the command to incline is given, the word march, may be omitted; and the files will turn into the required direction by a circular movement. The incline of a single division, is executed on similar principles.

12. To take Ground to the Flank and Front, by an Echelon Movement.

1. In line to the right. Fig. 1—Plate 3.

\[
\text{Sub-divisions—Right—Half Wheel—March!}
\]

The sub-divisions half wheel to the right, the officers on the left shifting to the right, the directing flanks, a sergeant moving up to the left flank of that sub-division which has no officer, where they command,

\[
\text{Halt—Dress!}
\]

The whole halt in echelon; the officers continuing on the directing flanks.

March!

Each division advances on lines perpendicular to its front; the directing-flanks keeping on a line parallel to the original alignment, and directly in the rear of those
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

Files of the sub-divisions on the right, through which the perpendiculars pass.

Halt!

When halted, the directing flanks are to be on the line a b, parallel to the original alignment.

Left—Wheel into Line! March!

The wheeling completed, sub-division officers respectively command,

Halt—Dress!

And take their former places.

The new alignment, if the movement has been accurately executed, will be parallel to the original front.

The movement to the left, being executed on similar principles, requires no explanation.

2. In open column to the right.

Sub-divisions—Right—Half Wheel! March!

The officers, if not already on the directing flanks, shift to those flanks, halt, and dress their divisions.

Column—March!

The column moves in echelon, officers carefully preserving the parallelism of their divisions, and covering of pivots.

Halt—Left—Half Wheel—March!

Halt—Dress!

In the same manner the column takes ground to the left.

Note. Any wheel less than the quarter circle, places a line of divisions in echelon; the quarter wheel, equal to \( \frac{1}{8} \) of the circle or 22\( \frac{1}{2} \) degrees, is sufficient where small obliquities are required; but the half wheel produces the most useful echelon for most oblique movements. In these, the perpendiculars make angles of 45 degrees, with the original position, and the line will gain as much to the front as to the flanks. If a greater obliquity be required, the echelon is formed by wheels greater than the half wheel, and the degree of wheel must in all cases be determined by the eye of the commander.

13. COUNTERMARCH BY FILES AND CHANGE OF FRONT ON THE CENTRE. Fig. 2—Plate 3.

By Files—Countermarch—On the Centre!

The files of the right wing turn, as far as their horses.
will admit, to the right; those of the left wing to the left; a marker is then posted in front of the right wing, a, and another in the rear of the left wing, c.

March!

The right flank moves to the right, wheels to the left about by files, in succession, and marches along the front; when the leading files arrive at A, even with the left marker, they halt, and turn to the left; the succeeding files halt and turn in succession as they arrive at their places. While this is executing, the left wing moves to the left, wheels to the left about by files, in a similar manner, and halts at B, opposite to the right marker, the files turning to the right. The right wing A, will now advance, halt and dress up with the left wing B, by the following commands.

Right Wing—March! Halt! Left—Dress!

The front is now changed to the original rear.
This change of front is more expeditiously performed by threes, as follows.

Threes—Outward from Centre—Wheel!—March!
The right wing threes wheel to the right, the left wing threes to the left.

Countermarch—on the Centre—March!
The right column of threes, wheel to the left about, round the right guide, and on arriving at A, the threes wheel up to the left, by command; the left column of threes wheel about to the left, at the left guide, halt at B, and wheel up. The right wing is then brought up, and dressed with the left as above described. This manoeuvre may also be executed from one flank, either by files or by threes; in which case, the whole move to the same flank.

TROOP FILINGS.

Filings are necessary in narrow roads and passes, where the ground is covered or broken and the movement in larger front is difficult. The horses move freely, easily, and without confinement to rigid dressing; but they necessarily lengthen out into a long train; take up much ground and time in forming up, and the movement should not be resorted to, in large bodies, excepting where the ground will admit of no other.
114

MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

Where the ground will admit of it, the serenfiles
march on their proper flank, keeping their relative posi-
tions, but where this is impracticable they follow by
files in the rear.

14. FILING TO THE FRONT.

1. From the right flank.

From the Right—File to Front!

The coverer of the right flank officer moves up to the
right of the officer; the files turn to the right, lapping
on each other.

Forward—Trot!

The right two trot directly to the front; the others
march to the right, wheel in succession, by files to the
left on the ground of the right flank, and follow the lead-
ing men; the serenfiles march on the right flank.

Halt!

On the Right—Form to the Front!

A sergeant trots out 10 or 15 yards to the right of the
head of the column, for a point of formation; the men
at the same time turn the horses a quarter circle to the
left.*

March!

The right file stands, the others move out to the left
on the trot, in right lines, to their places, in the line
prolonged from the marker through the front file, halt
and dress as they successively arrive. The serenfiles and
marker return to their places in the rear.

2. From the left flank.

From the Left—File to the Front!

The covering corporal of the left officer moves up to
the left side of his officer; the files quarter turn to the
left.

Forward—Trot!

The officer on the left leads off on the trot, followed

*This places the horses in a kind of echelon of files, each fronting to his place in the line. To form from
this position has, recently, been termed forming by the
line of science. The movement is executed with admira-
ble ease, and is often practised by small bodies of cav-
alary, both to right and left.
By the whole in files, each wheeling to the right on the ground from which the leading officer marched.

Halt! On the Left—Form to the Front!

A guide from the serre-files, trots out to the left of the head of the column for a point of formation.

March!

The formation is similar to that on the right flank, excepting that the movement of the files is to the right, and the dressing to the left.

3. From the centre.

From the centre—File to the Front!

The centre officer with the two centre files move forward, the former with his file closer, two horses’ length. (the file closer coming up to his left) the latter a full horse’s length, the front rank men inclining outward, and those of the rear coming between and abreast of them; the remaining rear rank men close up, and turn their horses’ heads towards the centre.

Forward—Trot!

The advanced files trot off perpendicular to the front, followed by the whole in column, each file wheeling outward from the centre when it comes to the ground from which the centre files moved.

Halt!

On the Centre—Form to the Front!

Two guides trot up and aligne themselves on the head of the column, one to each flank of the line, when formed: the horses of the right wing quarter turn to the right, those of the left, the same to the left.

March!

The files of the right wing trot to their places on the right, dressing by the left as they come into the alignement; the files of the left wing move in the same manner to the left, come up and dress by the right; the rear rank men in the head of the column, fall back and cover their file leaders, and the centre officer and guides take their former posts.

The other filings, to the front, are from the right and left flanks of divisions and sub-divisions, and from each flank of the troop at the same time, and are executed on the principles described above, by the following commands.
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

If from the flank of the troop.

From the Flank—File to the Front! Forward—Trot!

Halt!

On the Flank—Form to the Front! March!

If from a flank of Division.

From the Right (or Left) of Divisions—File to the Front!

Forward—Trot! Halt!

On the Right (or Left) of Divisions—Form to the Front!

March!

15. Filings to the Rear.

1. From the Right Flank.

From the Right—File to the Rear!

The rear rank closes to the front, and the whole quarter turn to the right by files.

To the Rear—Trot!

The right file wheels to the right, and trots off perpendicular, to the rear, followed by the whole in column of files, each file wheeling on the ground which was occupied by the right flank, before the movement.

Halt! Right About—Form to the Front! March!

The leading file wheels to the right about, the front rank man advancing and inclining a little to the right to gain the front of his file closer; the other files follow on a brisk trot, wheel by files to the right, pass along the rear of the first formed files, and wheel up to the right to their several places, dressing by the right flank, the rear rank man forming behind his proper file leader. The troop is now formed in the rear of, and fronting its former position.

2. From the Left Flank.

From the Left—File to the Rear!

To the Rear—Trot!

The whole file off to the rear on the principles explained in the last movement.

Halt—Left about—Form to the Front! March!

This formation is obvious from the direction already given.

Filing in two ranks at close files from the centre to the rear is a difficult movement and seldom necessary on service.

The directions for this movement, in one rank, in
Section 37, Part I, will clearly indicate the method of executing it in two ranks, when it may be required.

A column of files on the march, right in front, is formed to the left, by halting, turning to the left, and closing by the passage to the right. If the formation is to the right flank, the leading man of the first rank, circles round the leading man of the rear rank, advances a horse’s length on his right, and halts, when the rear rank man turns and covers. The succeeding men pass the first formed files, and wheel successively into their places on the left of the formed files, dressing by the right; the rear rank men forming behind their file leaders.

If a column of files changes the direction of its march the files wheel on a moveable pivot, by bringing forward the reverse flank. Fig. 4—Plate I, represents this movement to the right, A being the centre of the wheel, or pivot point.

16. FILING TO FRONT IN SINGLE FILE.

Suppose from the right.
From the—Right—Single File—To the Front—Trot!

The right file advances on the trot, the remaining files turn to the right, move to the right flank, and, in succession, turn to the left and trot up to the leading file. The whole forming a single file with a front and rear man alternately.

Halt! On the Right—Form to the Front! March!

Excepting the leading file, the whole quarter turn to the left, trot up to their places in the line, on the left of the right file, dressing by the right; the rear rank men carefully preserving their several places, in the rear of their file leaders.

The filings are to be executed briskly, even in the first lessons; and in practice with well instructed troops, on the gallop.

17. RANKING OFF TO THE FRONT.

This is in single file by ranks, the front rank leading.
From the Right—Rank off to the Front—March!

The right man of the front rank, trots off to the front, followed by those of that rank, all turning on the ground
the first man occupied; the rear rank men then follow, in the same order.

_Halt! On the Right—to the Front! Form—Trot!_

The leading man of the front rank advances a horse's length, all the others of that rank quarter turn to the left, trot off, and form by the right. When the leading man of the rear rank comes up to his file leader, the command _Rear Rank/Form up!_ is given, and the rank forms up, each man covering his file leader.

### 18 Movements by Threes.

The principles concerning the movements of ranks by threes, have already been explained, page 93, and they are applicable to the movements of a troop, squadron or regiment.

1. _To take ground to the Flanks._

The troop is supposed to be told off into threes, from right to left.

_Threes—Right Wheel—March!_

Each rank breaks into column of threes to the right, as described, Section 45, Part I, and receive the command _Halt—Dress!_

_Column—March!_

The commander conducts on the left of the column.

_Halt! Wheel up._

The troop now fronts as before.

_Threes—Left Wheel—March!_

_Column—March!_

The commander conducts on the right.

_Halt! Wheel up!_

2. _To advance to the Front, from a flank._

_Threes—Right Wheel—March! Halt! Dress!_

_From the Right—Threes to the Front—March!_

As soon as the column moves the commander orders, _Right Flank—Forward!_

The front of the column wheels to the left on a moveable pivot, the quarter circle, and at the word _Forward!_ moves perpendicular to the front, conducted by the commander. Each succeeding six wheel on the same ground.

_Column Halt! Threes—Left—Wheel up!_

_Halt! Dress!_
The troop is now formed on an alignment at right angles with the original one.

In advancing from the left, the wheel is to the left by threes and the left flank of the column is brought forward.

3. Formation to the Front.

The formation in No. 2 is to the flanks, but if it is required to form to the front of the column when right in front it may be executed as follows.

To the Front—Form Line!

The leading three of the front rank move forward two horses' length, those of the rear rank incline to the left and cover the front three.

March!

The remaining threes wheel and march to the left, and as they successively come opposite to their places in the line, on the left formed threes, bring the left flanks forward, march up and dress; the rear rank threes must follow their respective front rank threes, and cover them exactly, as they come into line.

The formation to the right, the column left in front, is done on similar principles.

4. To advance from a flank without a previous wheel.

From the Right—Advance by Threes! March!

The right three, in each rank, advance to the front.

Threes—Right Wheel! March!

The remainder wheel and move to the ground from which the first marched, halt, wheel to the left, the rear rank threes covering the front rank threes. The column has now three men abreast and consists of divisions of threes.

This column is formed into a rank entire, by the wheel of threes to the left; brought back into two ranks, by advancing the front rank threes, a horse's length, wheeling by threes to the right, closing up and wheeling up to the left. The same movements by the left will be obvious from the preceding explanations.

A variety of other movements by threes may be practised by the troop; but as they will be applied to the manoeuvres in the 3d Part, further explanations are unnecessary.
19. **CHARGING AND RETREATING BY DIVISIONS, AND IN LINE.**

This is the most important and difficult of cavalry movements; it must be practised in all the paces, and continued till it can be executed, by the troop, with steadiness, celerity and precision.

In the first lessons, the charge should be executed in sub-divisions, then by divisions and lastly by the whole troop, both at open and close order. A smooth piece of level ground, about 200 yards long, should be chosen for the movements, and when the horses have acquired a considerable degree of precision, they may be taken to ground that is a little uneven, and intersected with fences, ditches, &c.

1. **The Advance by Sub-Divisions and Divisions.**

   **Attention! Rear Rank—Open Order—March t**

   The rear rank reins back, three horses’ length.

   **First Sub-Division—will Advance!**

   Its commander orders **March t**.

   The sub-division walks forward dressing by the flank, on which the officer is posted, the ranks continuing at open order. Having advanced about 20 yards, the officer commands **Slow—Trot** t. The whole take the slow trot, which is to be continued about 40 yards, when the command **Canter t** puts them into the canter which should be continued 80 yards, when the word **Halt t** in a lengthened tone, will be given; at which all halt, excepting the two right hand files, who advance about 5 yards further, and halt as dressing points.

   **By the Right—Forward Dress t**

   The first halted files advance singly and dress up by successive movement by the two advanced files.

   The second sub-division is then ordered to advance and perform the same movements, when it will form up on the left of the first. The remaining sub-divisions proceed in a similar manner.

   The troop may now close ranks, change front to the rear, and by divisions return to the original ground, performing the same movements, where it will again change front, and face the riding ground.

   The movement must also be performed in sub-divisions and divisions, advancing and returning, in close order.
Swords should be at the slope, during the walk, but brought to the carry in the trot and canter.

2. Advance of the Troop and Charge, at close order.

The commander places himself in the centre of the front rank, the cornet falling back into the centre of the serresiles.

*The Troop—will Advance!*

Eyes are turned to the centre, and any irregularity in the ranks corrected by the officers. The commander will select two distant objects, in a line perpendicular to the alignment of the troop, to regulate his march. These may be trees, bushes, tufts of grass, hillocks, stones, or any fixed conspicuous objects that present themselves.

*March!*

The whole advance in line, on the walk, dressing by the centre, by an occasional glance of the eye, the swords at the slope. After proceeding about 20 yards, the command

*Brisk—Trot!*

Puts the whole into the trot, which is to be continued 30 or 40 yards, when the command

*Canter!*

Is given, and the troop continues on about 40 yards, and receives the command, in an audible voice,

*Charge!*

The trumpet sounds the charge, swords are brought to the guard, the point a little more forward than in the exercise, the bridle hand eased, legs, and if necessary, spurs pressed to the horse's side, and the whole put into speed, still dressing by the centre. After a charge of about 80 yards, the commander orders

*Canter! Slow—Trot! Halt!*

Swords are to be brought to the carry at the word canter, and to the slope at the halt. The commander and two centre files then advance 5 yards, and the command is given

*By the Centre—Forward—Dress!*

The troop advances up from the centre by files, and dresses by the centre files.

*Threes about—March!*

The whole go about by threes, halt and dress.
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

Retire on the Trot—March!

The troop trots to the old ground.

Halt! Threes about—March! Halt! Dress!

3. Charging, dispersing and pursuing.

The charge is now to be repeated on line, as has been described, and the enemy is supposed to be broken and retreating in confusion; the command is given

Flank Sub-divisions—Disperse and Pursue—March!

The two flank sub-divisions advance on the trot, extend their files inwards, and then pursue on the gallop, each man using sword or pistols, as circumstances require, without waiting for words from their officers. A strict attention to dressing is unnecessary in this movement, the object being to overtake the repulsed enemy, as expeditiously as possible, and to attack him while he is in disorder. That part of the troop which remains formed, must move forward to seize any advantages that offer, and to support the skirmishers. This mode of attack must be continued till the commander directs the trumpet to sound the call, on which the pursuers return full speed, and form in their places, on the flanks of the formed sub-divisions.

If the enemy is close when the charge is to commence, the line must be put into the canter without a previous walk, and trot; and it may sometimes be necessary to move off from a halt to full speed. The horses must be practised in all these movements, that they may be ready and know how to act on urgent occasions.

To advance in line, and execute a charge with precision, requires the greatest attention of officers and men; the smallest turn or inclination of the horses will produce crowding and irregularity in the line. To advance well, each horse should remain parallel to that of the leader; heads must not be turned to the centre, a glance of the eye in that direction is sufficient; the pressure of the wings, when it takes place, must be resisted. Should a horse fall back or get a little forward during the movement, he should be brought into his place by slow and almost imperceptible degrees; sudden alterations of any part of a line occasion a shock, and more or less of disorder.

The speed in the charge should not exceed that of the slowest horse; if greater is used, the line will necessa-
rily be broken. The rear rank must scrupulously observe the distance of a horse's length from the front, to avoid striking, and each man must follow his file leader without the smallest deviation.

For practice, 80 yards is a good distance for the charge; in action it may be necessary to charge twice or thrice that distance, to avoid as much as possible the fire of the enemy's artillery; but the charge ought, on no account, to be continued so far as to bring up the horses blown, when the conflict commences with the enemy. A troop that is brought to such perfection as to charge 240 yards with ranks and files well dressed, in complete and compact order, may be said to be invincible.

During the charge, the serrefile officers must be attentive to the rear rank, see that the horses keep well up, cover their file leaders and charge with vigor.

20. Skirmishing.

Skirmishers are necessary to cover the front and flanks of a corps; to mask manoeuvres in presence of an enemy, to pursue them when broken and retreating in confusion, and to attack in a loose and desultory manner, any small parties which may advance from a larger body to bring on an engagement.

Skirmishers are taken from one or both flanks of the corps; or they may consist of a reserve detached for the purpose, under a couple of sergeants, and drawn up in the rear of one or both flanks of a line, or on the reverse flank of a column.

Skirmishing by single troop is executed as follows: The troop advancing in line or column, the division of skirmishers on the front, flanks or rear, is ordered by the commander,

Skirmishers—Advance!

The trumpet sounds the march, the division, with swords at the carry, trot forward by files, or in line, under the commanding sergeants, and by a sharp incline extend to the right or left to double open files; or, if the ground requires, to greater distance, covering the front of the troop; the sergeants posting themselves, one in the centre of each rank. The front rank then
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.  

advances on the enemy by order of its commander in full gallop; when near the enemy each man, without waiting for a word, places his sword in the bridle hand, or slings it to his wrist, draws his left pistol, fires, returns and recovers his sword. If the enemy is retreating the rear rank then advances, passes the front rank, each man to the left of his file leader, gallops up to the enemy and attacks in the same manner; and thus they continue skirmishing, relieving each other, as long as circumstances may require, or till called in by trumpet signal. When a rank has fired and is relieved by the advance of another, it halts, returns swords, and loads, without waiting for a word, then returns pistol and draws swords to be ready for another attack. If the enemy is scattered and able to make but feeble opposition, the whole of the skirmishers may advance, form up in one rank, by bringing up those in the rear, the proper file leaders taking the right hand, and advance on the enemy; or the whole may be ordered to disperse and pursue, in full speed.

In skirmishing on the retreat the advanced skirmishers fire, turn to the left about, at the command about turn! and pass, by the left hand of the rear men, 20 or 30 yards, and at the command Halt—Front! they come about and front the enemy. The rear men then fire and retreat in the same manner.

Skirmishers are called in, to the main body, by established trumpet signals; the men must therefore be very attentive to, and instantly obey, the signal, by returning to their places on the flanks or rear.

When the skirmishers advance on the enemy, the commander of the troop may detach a section or subdivision from each flank, which will advance, sword in hand, to support the skirmishers. These parties will advance in compact order, about half the distance of the skirmishers, and take such positions as will be most favorable for supporting them. If possible the parties should, out flank the skirmishers a little; and should the latter expend their fire, the supporters may advance and take their places, extend their files (Sec. 22) and attack in a similar manner; and the first skirmishers may retire and, in their turn, form up into two supporting divisions in the rear. Supporters are necessary to guard the skir-
ishers from any small parties of the enemy which might get round the flanks and attack in the rear.

If the enemy is halted when the front rank of skirmishers advance, the latter will fire, gallop back to their former places, guarding themselves against pursuers with their swords and second pistol, and reload. The rear rank will then advance and execute the same movement.

In skirmishing the men belonging to the same files, should, in some measure, be attached and as much as possible, mutually support each other; for this purpose the whole of the pistols of the same file should never be discharged at once, excepting upon the most pressing occasions. Little attention is required to the dressing of ranks, during the movements; the men should advance readily, turn quick, and handle their arms with great dexterity, and the men of the same files should endeavour to keep each other in view, and be ready at all times to form up in their proper places when the word, or signal, is given for that purpose.

21. **Dispersing, Attacking in Pell-mell and Ballying.**

1. **To the Front in Pursuit.**

The commander will post himself in the rear with the trumpeter at his left side. Each man must note his right and left man, his file, and the number of his subdivision, that he may form instantly when the signal is given.

*The Troop—Will Disperse—and Pursue—March!*

The trumpet sounds the charge; the troop gallops off to the front, without regard to ranks or files, and sword in hand attacks the enemy who is supposed to be retreating in confusion. The pistol is to be used if circumstances require it, but the chief reliance must be placed on the sword which may now be wielded with great effect by the expert swordsman. Each man will move as directly to front as possible, avoid crossing the route of his right or left file, and commence the attack, the moment he comes up with, or meets the enemy, as his own discretion shall dictate; but great care must be taken in using the pistol, to avoid firing on each other.
No man must advance singly into the midst of the enemy, without he is sure of being supported by his comrades. Besides their own efforts against the enemy the officers will, during the conflict, watch over the men, keep them up to the enemy, and see that all vigorously perform their duty.

The commander accompanied by the trumpeter follows the troop, and when it becomes necessary to rally, he posts the latter, fronting the direction the troop is to take, and directs the rally to be sounded, on which the whole gallop back, and form in their places, on each flank of the trumpeter.

2. To the Rear in Retreat.

The Troop will Disperse—To the Rear—March!

The trumpet sounds the retreat; the trumpeter advances to the commander and the whole disperse full speed to the rear, followed by the commander and trumpeter. When the troop is to form, the trumpeter is posted in the required direction, the rally sounded, and the troop forms on the right and left, with all possible expedition.*

Dispersing and rallying will accustom the men to quick formations and much advantage will accrue from the practice. If a corps, which has been habituated to the movement, is at any time unfortunately broken and dispersed by the enemy, the commander, by his trumpet, will thus most expeditiously recall it to its duty and prepare it for another effort against the enemy. The men should however be informed that a dispersion by an enemy is the greatest misfortune that can happen; but

* The attack in pell mell, which the French term à la débandade, becomes necessary where the enemy is retreating in confusion, over ground that is broken and embarrassed with bushes, fences or other obstructions, which may prevent cavalry from advancing in regular order in the speed requisite to overtake the enemy. The retreat in pell mell, is proper on similar ground, and particularly from a superior infantry, from whom cavalry can retire without being exposed to the charge, and much sooner get out of reach of their musketry, than when retiring in regular order.
in such case they are not to look upon the action as lost; for by a proper attention to the command of their officers, and a reliance on their own exertions they may immediately form and retrieve their misfortune.

22. Extending and closing Files.

Files are extended either by turning and moving to flank or by the passage. When the extension is considerable or the front large, the former is to be preferred and is executed as follows:

To Double Open Files—Left Extend!

The right file stands fast, the other quarter turn to the left.

*March!*

The files turned, move to the left, by successive march and when the whole are in motion, with horses close to the croup, the command, *Halt! Front!* is given, on which the whole halt and turn square to the front, and dress by the right; the files being now the length of a horse from each other.

*Right—Close Files!*

All turn to the right, except the right file.

*March!*

They move and close to the right in succession, by turning as they come to their places and passing the horses in that direction.

The extension to the left is similar and requires no explanation.

From the Centre—to Double Open Files—Extend!

The right wing quarter turns to the right, the left to the left. *March!*

This extension is made from the centre on the principles above explained, and the closing, by the command

To the Centre—Close Files—March!

If the front is small the extension may be made by the passage. The commands are—To the Right—(or) To the Left—(or) From the Centre—Passage to Double Open Files! March!

If a different extension is required, it must be named in the command; and if it be greater than double open files the number of yards must be mentioned and each man will halt and turn, when he judges he has gained
the number of yards; the officers correcting false distances.

THE FIRINGS.

The firings are generally executed in open or double open files. The extension is made by turning and filing, or by the passage, from the centre or flanks as described in the preceding section.

24. FIRING BY RANKS STANDING.

The files being opened the commander orders
Prepare—to Fire!
The men unfasten their holsters and boxes.
Front Rank—Ready!
At this command the left pistols are to be drawn, placed in the bridle hand, cocked and brought to the advance; the barrel inclined forward.
Aim! Fire! Prime and Load!
After loading, the pistols are brought to the advance on the right thigh.
Rear Rank—Ready!
The rear rank makes ready, moving up at the same time and forming with the front rank, each man taking the left side of his file leader.
Aim—Fire!
The men of the rear rank fire, bring pistols to the advance, rein back and cover their file leaders as before.
Prime and Load!
Return—Pistols!

25. FIRING BY RANKS, ADVANCING.

Prepare to Fire!
Front Rank—Ready! Aim! Fire!
Prime and Load!
Rear Rank—March!
The rear rank passes through the front rank, each man to the left of his file leader.
Trot!
It trots forward 30 or 40 yards, halts and fires, by order of the commander and reloads.
Front Rank—Forward Trot!
PART II.

The Front rank trots through the rear rank to the right of the file leaders, proceeds 30 or 40 yards, halts, fires and reloads by order of the commander. In this position the advanced rank may return pistol, draw sword and charge to the front, the rank in the rear, acting as a line of support, with swords at the carry.

The Troop forms up to its former position by bringing the rank, in the rear, up to the advanced rank, and forming behind the file leaders, or passing through and forming in front as the case may require.

26. FIRING IN RANK ENTIRE, ADVANCE AND CHARGE.

Form Rank—Entire—March!

The men in the rear rank move up and dress, on the left of their file leaders.

Prepare to Fire!
Ready! Aim! Fire!
Prime and Load!

The whole load and bring pistols to the advance on the right thigh.

Forward—Trot.

The rank trots forward dressing by the centre.

Ready! Aim! Fire!

Return Pistols! Draw Swords!

Charge!* Trot! Halt!

By the Centre—Forward Dress!

At the last command two centre files advance five or six yards and the men on each flank move up and dress on the centre.

Form two Ranks—March!

The rear rank falls back, each man passages to the right and covers behind his file leader.

27. ATTACK IN DOUBLE POTENCE.

This is an attack on the front and flanks at the same time, upon an enemy advancing on the front of the troop.

Rear Rank—From the Centre—File Outward!

* The charge is executed as described in No. 2—Section 19—Part II.
The rear rank men of the right division turn to the right, those of the left division to the left, the quarter circle, a non commissioned officer at the head of each wing.

March!

The rear rank, files obliquely outward, one half to each flank at double open files, and halts by command of the leaders on the lines A B and C D, Fig. 4—Plate 3. The right division then turns by file to the left, and the left division, by the same, to the right, facing the flanks of the enemy, E F. The commander then directs the trumpet to sound the charge, on which the division A B and C D charge on the enemy's flanks, and attack sword in hand. If the enemy is repulsed, the assailants will disperse and pursue, and the front rank may advance to support them. But if the enemy maintain their ground against the flank attacks, the commander will charge him at full speed, sword in hand, with the front rank, and if successful, disperse and pursue; the rear rank men, in the mean time, incline inwards, form a rank at close files and advance on the trot to support those engaged. The troop forms by trumpet signal when the commander directs, as has been described.

In the attack, in single potence, the rear rank all file off to one flank and form on a line oblique to the front; and the attack is made on one flank only.

23. Formation of a Column of Sub-divisions by Advancing from a Flank, with the Methods of Deploying.

1. Formation on the Right Flank.

By Sub-divisions—Form Open Column—From the Right—March!

The first sub-division advances, on the walk, directly to the front.

Sub-divisions—Right Wheel—March!

The remaining sub-divisions wheel to the right, halt and dress. Their officers then command March! and as the sub-divisions arrive on the ground from which the first marched, they successively command Left Wheel—Forward Trot!
Each trots forward, following the first sub-division, preserving wheeling distances; the officers on the pivot, now the left flanks; the serre-file in their usual places in the rear.

Deployment to the Left.

Column will Deploy—To the Left—March!

The leading sub-division slackens to a walk, the others quarter turn to the left, by files, and on the trot incline to the left, and come up successively into their places in line, on the left of the leading sub-division, where they receive from their officers the command Forward! the officers taking their posts in line.

2. Formation from the Left Flank.

By Sub-divisions—Form Open Column—From the Left—March!

The left sub-division walks forward.

Sub-divisions—Left Wheel—March!

Remaining sub-divisions wheel to the left, halt and dress, and receive from their officers March! Right Wheel—Forward! Trot!

They trot forward in open column, left in front, the officers taking post on the right, now the pivots.

Deployment to the Right.

Column will Deploy—To the Right—March!

The leading sub-division slackens pace, the files of the other sub-division quarter turn to the right, incline and form on the right of the leading sub-division, upon the principles of the preceding deployment.

Note.—The formation and deployment of close columns by the flank march of divisions will be explained in the movements of the squadron and regiment, Part III.

29. Closing an Open Column.

The column moving on the walk, receives the command

Close—Column!

The divisions trot up within the length of a horse of each other and fall into the walk; the serre-files go to the reverse flanks, unless ordered to the rear of the column.

30. Opening a Close Column.

If it becomes necessary to open a close column, all,
MOVEMENTS OF THE TROOP.

Accepting the front division, slacken pace, at the command

*Open—Column!*

And, as they respectively gain wheeling distances, their officers command

*Forward!*

On which they move forward in the same pace as before, the serenades falling into the rear of their respective divisions.

31. COUNTERMARCH IN OPEN COLUMN, FROM A DEFILE.

An open column having advanced into a defile, where the flanks cannot be extended, and it becomes necessary to retire, the command is given as follows,

*The Column will Retire!*

If formed of sub-divisions, each officer tells off his sub-division into two equal sections.

*Right Sections—Forward!*

The right section of each sub-division moves forward the length of its front, and halts, by word from its commander.

*About Wheel—March!*

The right sections wheel to the left about; the left sections to the right about; the right sections moving forward to the ground from which the left sections wheeled, halt and dress. The column, now facing the former rear, may be marched out of the defile and formed to its original front, by an operation similar to the above movement.

If the column is close, it will go about by threes, retire, halt and wheel up. An open column may in the same manner retire by threes; and if the divisions are already told off, this movement is more expeditiously executed than wheeling about by half divisions, or sub-divisions, as described in this section.

32. INCREASING AND DIMINISHING FRONT, WHEN ON THE MARCH.

An open column, of sub-divisions, advancing by the...
right and circumstances require an enlargement of front, the commander orders

Form Divisions!

The left sub-division of each division, receives from its officer

Left—Incline!

It moves out obliquely to the left and front, forms on the left of its right sub-division, and moves directly to front at the command forward!

Form—Company!

Left division receives the command from its officer

Left—Incline!

The division inclines on the trot, to the left and front, and when even with the left flank of the leading division, it receives the command

Forward!

And moves forward in line, the whole dressing by the centre.

The front is diminished, by forming column from a flank as in section 28. Or it may be done by breaking off, inclining till the divisions or sub-divisions cover the one which is to form the front, and advancing successively. The commands are as follows:

Divisions—or 
Sub-divisions—

From the

Right—

or Left—

Break off!

When a division or sub-division has inclined so far as to cover the one which forms the head of the column, its officer commands Forward! It then advances, the officer taking post on the pivot flank.

If a sub-division is required to diminish its front, it must be done by filing or breaking off by sections.

ECHELLON MOVEMENTS:

The echelon formation is fully explained in section 46.

33. DIRECT ECHELLON TO THE FRONT.

1. From the Right in Sub-divisions.

In Echelon—Of Sub-divisions—From the Right—March!

The right sub-division advances, on the walk, directly to the front, when it has gained wheeling distance.
the officer of the next sub-division commands *Sub-division—March!* It marches forward, the right flank keeping even with the left of the first. The third and fourth sub-divisions proceed in a similar manner, when their respective right sub-division has gained wheeling distance. Each sub-division preserves its front open, inclining neither to the right nor left. The officers post themselves on the directing flanks, that is the flank towards that from which the echelon is formed. If a sub-division is without a commander, an officer, or sergeant, will advance from the serjeile rank and take charge of it. Fig. 6—Plate 2, shows this movement from the left.

**On the Right Sub-division—Form to Front—Trot!**

The second, third and fourth sub-divisions trot up, and form on the left of the right sub-division, their officers respectively commanding, *Slow Pace! Right—Dress!* The commander then halts the troop.

2. **From the Left by Sub-divisions—Fig. 6—Plate 3.**

**In Echelon—Of Sub-divisions—From the Left—March!**

The sub-divisions advance from the left, as before from the right, the leaders taking post on the left which are now the directing flanks.

The line is formed on the right of the leading sub-division by the command:

**On the Left—Sub-division—Form to Front—Trot!**

This is similar to the other and requires no explanation.

*Note.*—If the distance between the sub-divisions when in echelon, is required to be more or less than wheeling distance, it must be named in the command. For example: **In Echelon—Of Sub-divisions—From the Right—At — Paces—Trot!** The distance is ascertained by the eye alone, and the officers must be quick in determining it, and give the command for their respective sub-divisions to advance, without a moment's delay.

34. **Movement, in Echelon, to the Rear.**

**Suppose from the Left.**

**Retire in Echelon—Of Sub-divisions—From the Left.**

Left sub-division officer commands,

**Thirds About—March! Halt! Dress! March!**

The left sub-division wheels about by thirds, walk.
off to the rear, its leader on the (now) right flank. As soon as the left sub-division marches off, the leader of the 3d sub-division commands,

_Threes About—March! Halt! Dress!_

And when the leading sub-division has gained wheeling distance, _March!_

The remaining sub-divisions go off to the rear in a similar manner. The commander will put the whole into the trot, and when he chooses to form the line, order

_Halt! Threes About!_

_On Right Sub-division—Form to the Front—Trot!_

The 2d, 3d, and 4th sub-divisions trot up and dress on the left of the 1st.

Retiring from the right is executed in a similar manner.

_Note._—When performed in presence of an enemy, the movements in echelon should be masked by a line of skirmishers.

35. **Echelon change of position to an oblique alignment, advanced.**

_Suppose to the Right by Sub-divisions on the Line E F, Fig. 5—Plate 3._

_Under-divisions—Right—Quarter Wheel! March!_

When the sub-divisions have completed the quarter wheel, their leaders command _Halt! Dress!_ Sergeants from the serrefile move up to command those without officers. The guides from the serrefile then trot forward and mark the new alignment, as shall be pointed out by the commander.

_Forward—Trot!_

The echelon A B trots forward, and when the right flank of the right sub-divisions arrives at the point of appui a, the commander orders

_Halt!_

The whole halt in echelon. The commander then wheels the right sub-division up to the new alignment, and the leaders successively command

_Left Flank—Forward!_

The sub-divisions wheel to the right, on a moveable pivot, and on arriving at the alignment on the left
flank of those already forward, receive from their leaders

_Halt! Dress!_

The troop is then formed on the new alignment, and the guides return to their posts. The movement is made to the left by wheeling into echelon to the left, marching and forming by the left sub-division on similar principles.

_Note._—When the new alignment makes with the old one nearly a right angle, the echelon must be formed by a wheel greater than the quarter wheel. The degree of wheel is always to be determined by the eye of the commander. Particular directions concerning this quantity are given, Section 56, Part I.

36. **Passage of Obstacles.**

A line or column when advancing may be obstructed on the flanks, or some part of the front, by cavities, rocks, trees, buildings, high fences, &c. which will render it necessary to break off some parts of the line or column, to enable it to pass. This is done without command. If the obstruction is on the flanks, the impeded files will break off, file inwards and follow, by files, that part which is obstructed. If the obstacle presents against any part of the front, the impeded files break off, turn outwards from the centre of the obstruction, and, by files, follow on the right and left. As the ground opens the files will move up into line, in their original places. If the obstruction be equal to, or more extensive than the front of the troop, a column may be formed on the right or left, and in that order the obstacle may be passed, and the line again formed by deployment.

37. **Passage of Defiles.**

A single troop will, in most cases, pass a narrow defile, by filing from a flank or some part of the front before which the defile presents. But if it be necessary to keep the troop in compact order, the movement by threes must be resorted to, especially where the defile will admit a front of six horses. In general it is considered safest to pass by a flank, by which the troop will
retain its natural position and be ready to form into line immediately on passing, or to march to any required point. But if the defile presents directly before the centre, the movement may be more expeditious from the centre; and if the line is to form immediately on passing, this formation will be sufficiently safe and expeditious. Particular instructions for these movements are hardly necessary for the officer who comprehends the troop filings as laid down, Sections 14 and 15—Part II. The passage by squadrons and regiments will be given in Part III.

33. **Formation of a Troop in Rank Entire.**

When a troop is reduced to a number, not exceeding 32 rank and file, it may be drawn up in rank entire, and told off into two divisions, four sub-divisions, and eight sections as prescribed for a troop of two ranks; the lieutenants on the flanks, the cornet in the centre, sergeants forming a serrefile rank a horse's length in the rear, one behind the centre of each sub-division: the corporals are posted one on each flank of the troop, the two other in the centre on the right and left of the cornet. The trumpeters are behind the right flank in the serrefile rank, as in the formation in two ranks. For manoeuvres the troop should also be told off into threes and right and left files.

Most of the exercises and movements that have been described, are applicable to a troop in a rank entire; and the intelligent officer will, without difficulty, apply them to the manoeuvres of a troop thus formed, and readily make such variations as circumstances may require. The movements in rank entire are, in general, executed with more facility than in two ranks; but the impression of the charge, in single rank, must necessarily be feeble, and the troop is liable to defeat, in every contest with one formed in two ranks. This formation is therefore improper, excepting for very small corps, where circumstances require a more extended front than can be given in two ranks.
PART III.

FORMATION, EXERCISE AND MOVEMENTS, OF THE SQUADRON AND REGIMENT.

The exercises and movements of the squadron and regiment, being nearly similar, will be treated of, in this part, conjointly, after distinct instructions for the formations.

1. Organization and Formation of the Squadron.

A squadron usually consists of two troops drawn up in two ranks, without interval between the troops. The eldest, or first troop, is on the right; a cornet with a standard in the centre of the front rank, covered by a non commissioned officer. The left troop is sized from right to left by the method given in Section 2—Part II; the right troop in a reverse order, from left to right, the tallest men and horses being in the centre, the shortest on the flanks.

The squadron is told off into two half-squadrons, four divisions, eight sub-divisions, three and right and left files. The threes and right and left files must be told off from the standard to the right and left flanks, observing always, that the file on the right of the standard is to be told a left file and that on the left of the standard a right file. An officer is posted on the right of each division, and one on the left of the squadron, each covered by a sergeant or corporal in the rear rank. The supernumerary officers and sergeants form a serrefile rank, two horses' length in the rear of the rear rank, a sergeant behind each sub-division; the trumpeters are in one rank a horse's length in the rear of the serrefiles, behind the centre of the squadron.

A squadron is usually commanded by a major; but in his absence the command belongs to the senior captain. For exercise the commander posts himself in front of the centre of the squadron, but he is at liberty to move to any point as circumstances may require.

When the officers are all present, their posts according to this formation will be as follows. The major in front of the centre; first captain on the right; second on
the left; a first lieutenant on the right of the second and third division; a second lieutenant on the right of the fourth division, the cornet with the standard on the left of the second division, or in the centre of the squadron. Two officers will then become supernumerary: viz. a second lieutenant and cornet, who take post in the se
defile rank behind the centre of their respective troops. See Fig. 3—Plate 3, which represents two squadrons, each formed as described above. According to the organization of a troop, as given in Section 1—Part II. a squadron will consist of 48 files, inclusive of the officers; half-squadrons of 24; divisions of 12; sub-divisions of 0, and each of these is divisible into threes without a fraction, which is an eligible circumstance in many of the movements.


A regiment consists of two or more squadrons, commanded by a colonel and two other field officers, either a lieutenant-colonel and major, or two majors. A regimental staff is commonly attached to the regiment, consisting of an adjutant, quarter-master, surgeon, assistant-surgeon, veterinary-surgeon, paymaster, sergeant-major, quartermaster-sergeant and trumpet-major. Excepting the surgeons, the staff in the regular service, is taken from the line, and allowed additional pay.

The order of ranks and files both in squadron and regiment is the same as that for single troops, described Section 2—Part II. When the ranks are at close order, the squadron officers are posted two horses' length in front of the centre of their squadrons; the commander of the regiment about four horses' length in front of the centre of the regiment, and, when at exercise, facing it; the adjutant in the line of squadron officers, before the centre of the regiment, where he will be near the colonel and ready to communicate his orders. In the movements the adjutant's post is not stationary; he has charge of the division of appui, and will act under general directions, from the colonel, where circumstances may require. The trumpeters remain posted behind their respective squadrons, in the centre, as in sin-
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 145

gle squadron. The serjeant-major is posted in the ser-
refile rank, behind the centre of the regiment and is oc-
casionally to act in the division of appui; the remain-
ing officers of the staff have no place assigned, in the
manoeuvres, their duty generally requiring their atten-
dance on other business. At reviews they will be post-
ed as pointed out in the section on reviews.

Each squadron is told off and the officers posted in the
manner described for single squadrons, and the divi-
sions and sub-divisions should be equalized in point of
numbers, as nearly as possible. See Fig. 3—Plate 3.

When a squadron is without a major to command, the
senior captain of the regiment takes charge of it, his
place being supplied by his first lieutenant; and if a va-
cancy remains in the ranks, an officer must be brought
up, from the serrefiles, to fill it.

In a regiment of four squadrons, the troops are posted
in the following order from right to left 1, 5—2, 6—3,
7—4, 8: in one of three squadrons, 1, 4—3, 5—2, 6:
in one of two squadrons, 1, 3—2, 4. Giving the right
of each squadron, the precedence, ranking from flank to
flank.

When three troops are joined for exercise and ma-
œuvre, they may form a squadron of six divisions, and
twelve sub-divisions, and each troop may be considered
a manoeuvring division, like that of half squadron, in
the preceding formation; but to be designated by the
appellation company, in the words of command. Five
troops may form two squadrons, one of two troops, ac-
cording to the usual formation; the other of three,
agreeably to the method last pointed out. Seven troops
will form three squadrons, one of three, and two of two
troops each according to the methods above described.
But the formations of squadrons with odd numbers does
not admit of a continued bisection, the most natural di-
vision, and that best adapted to the movements of troops
in manoeuvre. In a regiment of two squadrons, they
are termed right and left squadrons; in one of three
squadrons right, centre, and left; in one of four squad-
drons, right, right-centre, left-centre, and left squadrons.
But it is believed that to number the squadrons from
right to left is a more eligible method. The divisions
in each squadron are numbered 1, 2, 3, 4; the sub-divi-
sions from 1 to 8.
An interval of about eight yards is usually made between the squadrons; this will permit two ranks of cavalry, in threes, to pass through without interfering.

The troops that are to form into squadron or regiment, will first, draw up on their respective troop parades, and be told off into divisions and sub-divisions, and the officers and non-commissioned officers posted as has been already described, Section 2—Part II. An inspection of the men, horses, arms and equipments is then to be made, and all deficiencies supplied. The captains will then march their troops, in column of sub-divisions or sections, to the regimental parade, where they will be posted by the adjutant, according to rank, and told off into threes and right and left files from the standards; the sub-divisions and divisions equalized as nearly as convenient, and the standards planted in the centre of the squadrons. The squadron officers then take their posts, in front of the centre of their squadron, for exercise and manoeuvre.

If the standards are deposited at some distance from the parade ground, they are brought to the regiment by the cornets who are to bear them, to which duty they are to be assigned by the adjutant, guarded by an escort of four files from the centre of each squadron, accompanied by two or more trumpeters and the sergeant-major. The trumpeters ordered for this duty, having advanced to the rear of the centre of the rear rank of their squadrons, the standard cornets respectively command,

Four Centre Files—To the Front—March!

The files ordered, advance clear of the front, and halt by command. The trumpeters then advance through the intervals and take post in front of their escorts; and that of the left squadron, wheels to the right, trots up and forms on the left of the right escort, the sergeant-major advancing from the interval of the squadrons and posting himself in the rear of the escorts.

The senior cornet then wheels the escorts to the right, in two divisions, and marches them to the quarters of the commander of the regiment, where the standards are supposed to be lodged; each cornet in front of his escort, the sergeant-major in the rear, the trumpets preceding the whole. On arriving at the quarters of
the commander the escorts form up in line, facing the quarters, and draw swords, the trumpets on the right flank. The sergeant major dismounts, and advancing to the commander, receives the standards, and the commander of the escorts orders poise—swords! and the trumpets sound the march, as a salute for the commander. Swords are then brought to the rest, the cornets return theirs, receive the standards from the sergeant major, and the commander of the escort wheels it by divisions and returns to the right flank of the regimental parade, the trumpets sounding the parade march. The commander of the first squadron then orders Attention! and the escorts pass, on a slow trot along the front, about 10 yards from the line, the trumpets still sounding. When the cornet of the right squadron comes even with its left flank, he wheels his escort to the left, passes the interval, wheels again to the left, passes along the rear, till opposite to the centre, when he wheels to the left and moves up to his place in the squadron. When the first escort wheels off, the commander of the second squadron orders, Attention! and the second escort trots along the front to the left flank of the squadron, succeeded by the sergeant-major, where it wheels to the left, passes along the rear to its place in the centre of the squadron; the sergeant-major and trumpets return to their former posts.*

When the regiment is formed in front of its encampment, where the standards are deposited, and in cases of hurry, all ceremonics with the standards may be dispensed with.

* This method of receiving the standards, is not founded on the absurd notion that they are to be revered by the men, but has utility for its object. When deposited at a distance, a small escort is obviously necessary for the security of the standards; the trumpet soundings are to advertise the squadron officers of their approach, and the passage along the front to give the men, and especially those who may have been absent from the regiment, an opportunity of viewing the standards, that they may be able to distinguish them from others in action, an important point in the discipline of soldiers.
PART III.

3. Parade Exercise.

The regiment formed the colonel takes his post before the centre and directs the necessary exercises as follows: Words by commander.

The Regiment—Will take Open Order!

By squadron officers.

Rear Rank—Open Order!

The right man of the rear rank in each squadron reins back, two horses' length.

March!

The rear rank reins back the length of two horses, and dresses by the right man, the officers in the front rank advance two horses' length to the front and dress on a line, their covering non-commissioned officers remaining in the rear rank; the cornets with colors advance a horse's length only.

Commander. The Regiment will perform—Sword Exercise—In Divisions!

The officers turn to the left about and front the squadrons.

Squad. Officer. Prepare for Sword Exercise—March!

The centre and left files of each three, rein back and cover behind the right files in each rank.

Squad. Officers. Draw Swords!

Swords are to be drawn and distance proved, as taught in the exercise of the troop, and each squadron put through the exercise in divisions, by the squadron officers, by the commands

First—Division! Second—Division! &c.

The exercise completed, the squadron officers command

To Front—Form—March!

The files that reined back, move up and dress with the right files of each three.

Commander. The Regiment—Will take close Order!

Squad. Officer. Rear Rank—Close Order—March!

The rear rank closes up within a horse's length of the front rank, the officers and standards remaining in front.

Commander. The Regiment—Will Dismount!

Squad. Officers. Left Files—Right Double—March!

Do. Prepare to Dismount! Dismount!

Do. Prepare to Mount! Mount!
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

Do. To Front—Form—March!
Commander. Officers to your Posts—March!
The advanced officers march to the left flank of their divisions, and pass behind the front rank, to their places in that rank; the cornets rein back into their former places.
The commander may also direct the regiment to dismount and link horses, and perform such movements on foot as he may deem necessary. The wheelings by threes, both to the flanks and about, and, if time will permit, the sword exercise on a right line by single men, from the flanks of squadrons, and the pistol exercise may be executed.

MANOEUVRES:

The manoeuvres comprehend all those regular movements which are necessary to be executed by troops, whether at review, or when engaged with the enemy in the field. "They consist in distributing equal motion to every part of a body of troops, to enable them to form, or change their positions in the most expeditious and appropriate method, to answer the purpose of cavalry, infantry or artillery."

A manoeuvre should be simple and natural, and executed by the shortest means; and no more words of command should be used than are necessary to give a correct idea of the movement. Troops well instructed, require but very short commands, and indeed they will perform wholly by trumpet or other signals, and with as much ease and precision as by the voice.

The movements in the following parts of the work are adapted to a regiment of two squadrons, told off into four half squadrons, eight divisions and sixteen sub-divisions. The figures in the plates, generally represent the divisions of the regiment, numbered from right to left. But more squadrons may be joined and manoeuvre on the same principles, and the necessary variations in the explanations will be obvious to the officer who comprehends the manoeuvres of a regiment of two squadrons. The manoeuvres of the regiment are generally executed by divisions, those of the squadron, by sub-divisions; the figures in the plates may represent...
divisions, in the regimental manoeuvres, and sub-divisions in those of single squadrons, and to adapt them to both, only one standard is represented, and that in the centre.

In the movements, great utility may be derived from the use of guides, or markers, placed as points of formation, appui, &c. These will facilitate the manoeuvres, and give a degree of precision, which cannot be attained by the common loose modes of execution.

In the regimental manoeuvres the operation by ranks of threes, is more safe and expeditious than by filing; and is generally preferred by the correct disciplinarian. Filing may be occasionally resorted to, where the ground is broken, or covered, and, in general, where the body exercising consists of small numbers.

"The great error of undisciplined cavalry, when in file, threes, or any kind of close column, is the want of ensemble, on the order to march or to change pace. When they are to occupy the ground their file leader stands upon, they are too apt to wait till he has quitted it; and thus, when a column marching at a walk is ordered to trot, false intervals are created by a kind of successive change of pace, instead of its being executed by the whole at the same moment. This evil, which every man in the ranks must feel the inconvenience of; if in the centre or rear of a column, will easily be remedied, if they all move on the word of command, and take for granted that it will be obeyed as quickly by the men before them as by themselves."


Commander. The Line—Will Wheel—to the Right—By Half Squadron!

Squad. Officers. Half Squadrons—Right Wheel—March!


Explanation.—At the order of the commander to wheel, the flank serjeants trot out and give the square of the wheel; at the halt, dress, they return to their places in the rear; the officers of the right flanks of the half squadrons give the halt, dress, and those commanding the half squadrons, who are on the left, shift along the rear to the left or pivot flank, and the officers
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 151

on the left of those squadrons, who do not command, shift to the right. The serenades continue in their former position, wheeling with their successive half squadrons. The standards and their covering corporals take post in the serenade rank behind the left flank of their right half squadrons.

To Wheel into Line.

Commander. The Column—Will Wheel into Line!
Squad. Officers. Left—Wheel into Line! March!

Explanation.—At the caution to wheel into line, the flank serenade sergeants mark the alignment on the pivots; when the wheeling is finished, division officers return to their former post in the line, and the squadron officers go to the left flanks, dress the squadrons by the guides, and return to the centre.

Note.—Wheeling by half squadrons to the left and again into line is performed on similar principles; the senior officers shifting to the pivots when the wheel is completed, and all to their places in line when it is formed.

5. WHEELING BY DIVISIONS.

Commander. The Line—Will Wheel—to the Right—By Divisions.
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—Each division wheels the quarter circle to the right, halts and dresses by order of its right flank officer; the commanders on the right of division then shift, by the rear, to the left flank; the officer on the right of the fourth division in each squadron and the serenades, remaining in their usual places; the standards on the left flank of the division.

Guides are not necessary to mark the wheels of division, nor for any smaller bodies. The officers will give the halt when they judge the quarter circle is completed.

To Wheel into Line.

Commander. The Column—Will Wheel into Line!
Squad. Officers. Left—Wheel into Line! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—The wheeling completed, and officers
having dressed their divisions, will take their proper posts in the line; the standards move up into the centre, and the squadron officers correct the dressing if necessary.

The wheel to the left and back into line is too obvious to need explanation.

6. Wheeling by Sub-divisions.

Commander. The Line will—Wheel to the Right—By Sub-divisions!
Squad. Officers. Sub-divisions—Right Wheel—March!
Sub-div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—When the wheel commences the two serrefile officers, with two serrefile sergeants in each squadron, move up to the right flanks of those sub-divisions which are destitute of commanders, and when the quarter wheel is completed, halt and dress them; the right serrefile officer to the second sub-division, the left to sixth, and the sergeants to those sub-divisions behind which they are posted. After dressing their sub-divisions the officers and leading sergeants, shift by the rear to the left flanks. The standards take post behind the left flank of the sub-division on their right with the coverers, in the serrefile.

To Wheel into Line.

Commander. The Column—Will Wheel into Line!
Squad. Officers. Left—Wheel into Line—March!
Sub-div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—The wheeling and dressing of sub-divisions completed, the officers and sergeants return to their post in line and serrefile rank; the standards to the centre, and the squadron officers go to the left flank and correct the line if not truly dressed.

In the wheel to the left by sub-divisions, the standards take post in the rear of the sub-division on their left; the serrefile officers command the same divisions as in the wheel to the right, and the squadron officers remain on the right flank of the column.

Formation and Deployment of Columns.

A squadron or regiment breaks into column by wheel-
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 153

ing to the right or left as has been described in the preceding sections; or by the flank, echelon or inclined march of divisions or sub-divisions, as follows.

7. CLOSE COLUMN ON THE RIGHT, THE RIGHT IN FRONT.—Fig. 2—Plate 4.

**Commander.** Form Close Column—Of Divisions—By the Right—The Right in Front!

**Squad. Officers.** Divisions—Right—Quarter—Wheel—March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Threes—Right—Wheel! March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Dress!

**Commander.** March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Wheel up! Left Dress!

**Explanation.**—At the command quarter wheel, all except the right division (No. 1—Fig. 2,) wheel the quarter circle to the right, halt and dress, in echelon, and if the divisions are not told off into threes, the division officers tell them off, quickly, in a low voice. At the march, by the commander, the divisions, led by their officers, march into the rear of the right division, halt and dress, and the officers shift to the left flanks. The division No. 2, inclines to the right, to disengage from No. 1, by command of its officer. The standards remain on the flank of their divisions; the serrefiles and musick form in the rear of the column, and the squadron officers are on the left flank of the column. A C, represents the regiment in echelon, formed by quarter wheels, the divisions pointing to their places in the column A B.

**Deployment to the Left.**

**Commander.** Column—Will Deploy—To the Left!

**Do.** Threes—Left—Wheel!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Dress!

**Commander.** March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Wheel up! March! Halt! Dress!

**Explanation.**—At the caution to deploy two guides from the division of appui, trot out and aligne themselves on the front of the first division, at A and B—Fig. 1—Platè 5. The first division stands fast, the others, having wheeled by threes to the left, move out
to the left at the word *march*, by the commander: when the second division has gained its front it halts, *moves up*, marches into the alignment A B, halts and dresses on the left of the first division, which is the point of appui for the right flank of the second. The remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner. Having dressed their divisions the officers take their posts in line, by shifting by the rear, the serrefiles and musick also return to their places in the rear.

8. **Close Column on the Left, the Left in Front.**

Commander.  
*Form Close Column—of Divisions—by the Left—the Left in Front!*

Squad. Officers.  
*Divisions—Left—Quarter Wheel! March!*

Division Offs.  
*Halt! Dress!*

Squad. Officers.  
*Threes Left—Wheel! March!*

Division Offs.  
*Halt! Dress!*

Commander.  
*March!*

**Explanation.**—This formation is nearly similar to the formation on the right; the officers of divisions after the wheel by threes, and the *halt dress*, shift along the rear to the right flanks, to lead their divisions, and having halted them in column, take post on the right, now the pivots.

*Deployment to the Right.*

Commander.  
*Column will Deploy—to the Right!*

Do.  
*Threes—Right Wheel!*

Division Offs.  
*Halt! Dress!*

Commander.  
*March!*

Division Offs.  
*Halt! Wheel Up! March! Halt! Dress!*

This is too obvious to need explanation.

9. **Close Column on a Central Division, Right in Front.**  
Fig 2—Plate 5.

Commander.  
*Form Close Column—of Divisions—on the Centre—Right in Front!*

Squad. Officers.  
*Divisions—Right—Quarter Wheel!*

Divis. Officers.  
*Halt! Dress!*
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

Right Squad. Officers.

Left Do. Divis. Officers.

Commander. Divis. Officers.

Explanation.—The fifth division stands fast; the other quarter wheel to the right, into echelon. The four right divisions wheel into threes to the left; the three left divisions the same to the right; the officers placing themselves at the head to lead. At the march, by the commander, the right divisions march to the left, and the left division to the right, and form in column, the right divisions in front of the fifth, the left in its rear. The officers of the divisions that marched by the right, shift to the left or pivot flank, and the whole dress to the left. In the same manner a column may be formed on any other division.

Deployment from the Centre. Fig. 3—Plate 5.

Commander. Column will Deploy—From the Centre!

Do. Threes—Right and Left—Wheel!

March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. March!

5th Divis. Officer. March! Halt! Left Dress!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Wheel Up! March!

Right or Left

Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—At the caution to deploy, guides mark the alignment on the front division, beyond the flanks of the line, and one posts himself with his horse's head even with the left flank of the first division. The fifth division is to be considered as the centre, and does not wheel; those in front of this, wheel by threes to the right, those in the rear by threes to the left; the officer of the right divisions shift to the right flanks to lead. At the word march! by the commander, the four front divisions march to the right, and the three rear divisions to the left, parallel to the alignment; as soon as the fifth division is unmasked by the fourth, it marches up.
to the guide A, and halts on the alignement. The fourth, as soon as it unmask the fifth, halts, wheels up, and marches up to the alignement; the second, third, sixth, seventh and eighth, as soon as they successively unmask each other, halt, wheel up, and move up in the same manner to the alignement. The first division marches to the right on the alignement, and when it uncover the second, halts, wheels up and dresses Officers take their posts in line, as soon as they have dressed their divisions.

10. Close Column on the Right, the Left in Front. Fig. 4—Plate 6.

Commander. Form Close Column—of Divisions—on the Right—Left in Front.

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Left Quarter—Wheel! March!

Do. Do.

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Squad. Officers. Threes—Right—Wheel! March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. March!


Explanation.—In this formation, the right division keeps its ground, the other divisions wheel to the left the quarter circle into echelon, halt, dress, and wheel to the right by threes, pointing to their places in front of the right division. At the word march, by the commander, the divisions march to their places in front of the right, halt, wheel up, and dress. The left division is the front of the column, the others in reverse order, the right being the rear. See Fig. 4—Plate 6. This column is deployed to the right, as in section 8.

Note.—On similar principles, the column is formed on the left, with the right in front.

Deployment of a Column to the Right, Having the Right in Front.

When a column, formed right in front, is obstructed on the left flank, as represented in Fig. 1—Plate 6, and cannot be deployed to the left, it may deploy to the right on the rear division, as follows.
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 157

Commander. Column—Will Deploy—to the Right!
Do. Threes—Right—Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Commander. March!
8th Divis. Officer. March! Halt! Left—Dress!
1st Divis. Officer. Halt! Wheel Up! Left—Dress!

Explanation.—At the caution three guides trot out from the rear, one takes post on the left of the head division, another passes round the pond on the left, and alignes on the front division; the third goes to the right flank and alignes with those on the left. All excepting the eighth division wheel to the right by threes, and march off to the right; when the eighth is unmasked by the seventh, it is ordered to advance up to the guide on the left flank, where it halts and dresses by the left; the other divisions, as they successively uncover each other, march up and dress on the alignement; the first being on the alignement will only halt and wheel up.—Guides return to their posts.

12. OPEN COLUMN ON THE RIGHT, THE RIGHT IN FRONT. Fig. 2—Plate 6.

Commander. Form Open Column—Of Divisions—On the Right—Right in Front!
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right—Half Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Squad. Officers. Threes—Right—Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Commander. March!
Divis. Officers. Right Flank—Forward!
Do. Halt! Wheel Up! Left—Dress!

Explanation.—The first division remains on its ground, the other quarter wheel to the right; the guides trot out and mark the alignement for the pivots (now the left flanks) at march! by the squadron officers, the divisions trot off, diagonally to the rear, on the dotted lines 8-8, 7-7, 6-6, &c. Fig 2—Plate 6, to their places in the col-
umn, when they bring right flanks forward till parallel with division No. 1, when they halt, wheel up and dress; the leaders taking post on the left; serrefiles behind their several divisions.

**Deployment to the Left.** Fig. 1—Plate 7.

- **Commander.** Column—Will Deploy—to the Left!
- **Squad. Officers.** Left—Incline!
- **Do.** March!
- **Divis. Officers.** Forward! Halt!
- **Do.** Right—Dress!

**Explanation.** Guides trot out and mark the alignment on the front division, which stands fast; the other divisions quarter turn to the left, by files, ready for the incline; at the march, they trot obliquely up to their places, making a sharp incline to the left; when the 2d division arrives at the left flank of the rear rank of the first division, it receives the command *Forward! Halt! Right—Dress!* and dresses by the right; the remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner, as they respectively arrive at the left flanks of their right hand divisions.

**Note.**—This column may be deployed by a half wheel to the left into echelon, and marching in that order till the right flanks of divisions come up near the alignment, when their officers respectively order

*Left Flank—Forward! Halt! Dress!*

In such deployment the caution from the commander will be, *The Column—will deploy—in echelon—to the left!* It may also deploy by the flank march of divisions, by threes, as in Section 7.*

The formation and deployment on the left flank, is similar and requires no explanation.

An open column is formed on a central division by an operation nearly similar to that in Section 9. The difference consists in wheeling the quarter circle, instead of the eighth, and bringing the flanks of threes forward, as the divisions come into column, to place

*The deployment of an open column by the flank march, or as the French term it *en tiroir*, is seldom resorted to, as it takes up more time than that by inclining, or by echellon, and is by no means so safe as either of the other methods.*
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 159

them parallel with the division on which the column is formed. A column deploys on an alignement oblique to its front, by wheeling the front division into the alignement, placing the guides and marching the divisions en tiroir by threes into the required direction, either obliquely advanced or retired, as the alignement requires. When the halt, and wheel up is given, the division ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the alignement. Previously to the caution the commander will wheel up the front division to the new direction and direct the markers to prolong the line. In the caution it must be mentioned that the deployment is to be on an oblique alignement, either advanced or retired, and the leaders of division will determine the direction of their march by the markers on the alignement.

13. OPEN COLUMN FORMED ON THE RIGHT, ON THE MARCH, BY INCLINING. Fig. 2—Plate 7.

Commander. Form open Column—On the Right Division!

Squad. Officers. Right—Incline!

Division Officers, } Forward! Left—Dress!

successively.

Explanation. The line moving to the front in the walk, at the command Right—Incline! commences the incline to the right; the right division moves directly forward; when the second division has inclined so far as to cover the front, it advances by the command Forward! from its leader. The remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner, as they respectively cover their right division. The officers lead on the left flanks; supernumeraries follow their divisions, and the trumpets follow or precede the column, as the commander shall direct.

Deployment to the Left. Fig. 1—Plate 7.

Commander. Column—Will deploy—to the Left! March!

Squad. Officers. Left—Incline! March!

Division Officers. Forward! Right—Dress!

Explanation. At the command Left—Incline! March! the leading division slackens pace, the others incline to the left on the trot, and as they come up to their
places in the line, receive from their leaders, Forward! Right—Dress! and they turn to the front, by a progressive movement, slacken pace and dress by the right. The formation by the left and deployment to the right, is clearly indicated by the above, the inclination being to the left, and the officers posts on the right.

14. **Double Column of Divisions formed on the Center, at division distance, by inclining.**—Fig. 3—Plate 7.

**Commander.** Form double Column—of Divisions—On the Centre—March!

**Rt. Sqd. Officer.** Left—Incline! March!

**Left Do.** Right—Incline! March!

**Divis. Officers.** Forward! Centre—Dress!

**Explanation.** At the command March! by the commander, the 4th and 5th divisions increase their pace, moving directly forward. At the commands to incline, the remaining divisions incline to the centre; when the 3d and 6th meet, their officers command Forward! Centre—Dress! and place themselves on the outward flank of their divisions, which move forward to division distance, covering the centre divisions. The remaining divisions proceed in the same manner. Serenades in the rear of their divisions; trumpeters in the rear of the column.

**Deployment from Centre.** Fig. 1—Plate 8.

**Commander.** Column—Will Deploy—From the Centre!

**Rt. Sqd. Officer.** Right—Incline! March!

**Left Do.** Left—Incline! March!

**Divis. Officers.** Forward! Centre—Dress!

**Explanation.** The two leading divisions, at the caution to deploy, slacken pace; at the incline, the right divisions incline to the right, the left divisions to the left, and, as they come up to the flanks of the formed divisions, receive the commands, Forward! Centre—Dress! Officers take their posts in the line.

**Note.**—Forming column in progressive movements by the inclined march, necessarily takes up considerable extent of ground in front. Where this cannot be had, the line may be halted, the leading division marched forward, the remaining divisions moved by threes, to
the flank, on which the formation is made, wheeled up and closed to proper distance, behind the leading divisions: Or—after halting, the line, except the first division, may break into column of divisions towards the flank from which the formation is made, march and wheel successively to the front, on the ground the leading division occupied in line. These methods have been explained, Section 28—Part II.

MOVEMENTS IN COLUMN.

The movements in column are often executed in presence of an enemy, and therefore it is essential that they be well understood by both officers and men, that no unnecessary delay may take place, in those critical moments when the greatest promptitude is necessary in order to seize on any advantages that may offer to insure victory.

15. DIRECT MARCH OF A COLUMN.

Commander. Column—Will Advance!
Do. March!

If it be an open column, the squadron officers, as soon as the caution is given, will command,
Forward—March!

Commander. Column—Halt!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—Every man in the column must advance instantaneously at the word march, without waiting for those in front: it is a common fault to wait for each other by which delay and irregularity are the consequence.

16. OPEN COLUMN, RIGHT IN FRONT, TO MARCH TO THE FRONT ON AN ALIGNEMENT.

Commander. Column—Will Advance—On an Alignement!
Squad. Officers. Forward—March!
Commander. Column—Halt!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—Previous to the caution the command...
der will select two distant objects (suppose I K—Fig. 1—Plate 4,) in the prolongation of the pivots of the column, which he will point out to the commanders of divisions. If no such objects present, three guides from the division of appui, will trot forward and separate about 100 yards from each other and align themselves on the pivots of the column. They will then rein back till their horses' heads hang over the place where their bodies were when they took up the alignement; at the march the column advances in the pace ordered; the pivot officers will carefully move on the alignement, occasionally glancing eyes to the points, or markers, keep their divisions closed to the pivots and at their proper wheeling distance.

When the column approaches close to the first marker, he turns his horse to the left and gallops off in the rear of the other two, and places himself about 100 yards beyond them on the same alignement; the next marker does the same as the column approaches, and thus they continue to prolong the line as long as the column advances.

When the column marches with the left in front, the alignement must be in the prolongation of the right flanks of divisions which are then the pivots.

17. Flank March of the Column.

Commander. Column—Will take Ground—To the Right!
Squad. Officers. Threes—Right—Wheel! March !
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress !
Commander. March !
Do. Halt! Wheel up !
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress !

Explanation.—Division officers, at the command to wheel to the right by threes, shift to the right flank to lead; when the column halts and wheels up they return to their former posts. If it is an open column the officers will preserve wheeling distances, and move parallel to each other.

Note.—The column takes ground to the left by wheeling threes to the left and proceeding in a similar manner. The movements are to be made on the walk, trot, or gallop, as shall be ordered.
18. **Column Changing the Direction of its March.**

An open column changes its direction by the wheeling of its divisions on a halted pivot, to the right or left successively, such portion of the circle as is requisite to gain the required direction; each officer giving the word to *wheel*, when his division arrives at the wheeling point, which may be marked by one of the guides previously sent out. If a column marching on an alignment is to change its direction to a new alignment, a marker is to be placed for the division to wheel on, at the point where the new alignment intersects the old one, and the new alignment must be marked and prolonged as has been pointed out.

A close column changes its direction on a moveable pivot by the command, *Right*—(or) *Left*—*Flank*—*Forward!* when the column arrives at the point of change. See Fig. 3—Plate 6. The direction obtained, the commander orders, *Forward!* and the column moves directly to the front.

19. **Countermarch and Change of Front in Open Column.** Fig. 6—Plate 3.

**Commander.** The Column—*Will Countermarch*—And Change Front—On Right Flank!

**Squad Officers.** *Right*—File! March!

**Divis. Officers.** *Left*—Flank—Forward! Halt! Right! Dress!

**Explanation.**—A serenfile sergeant, at the caution to change front, takes post on the left of the rear rank, of each division, facing the rear; at the command to *file*, the division officers shift to the right, and at the march move out half the length of the divisions to the right, and receive from their leaders the command, *Left Flank—Forward!* on which the leading files wheel about to the right, followed by the other files, and move to the markers: when the words, *Halt! Right—Dress!* brings them to the proper front. The officers remain on the right flank; serenfile sergeants fall into the rear. The column now faces the original rear with the left in front.

20. **Rear of the Column Brought to the Front.**

**Commander.** Rear Division—*Will take the Front!*
Squad. Officers. Threes—Right Wheel—March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Wheel up! Dress! March!

Explanation.—The rear division wheels by threes to the right, marches its length out to the right flank, halts, wheels up and advances; the next division performs the same operation when the division moving, is opposite to its flank. The others execute the same movements, in regular succession. When the whole are in column the commander will give the command, Halt! The column is then changed, the division that was in the rear being now in front of the column.

The rear of a column may be brought to the front also by filing from both flanks, moving into the front, and forming as follows:

The caution will be given, Rear—Division—To the Front—By Files—From the Flanks—March! Squadron officers command, Divisions—From the Flanks—File to the Front! The rear division officer commands, March! The division files forward from the flanks, passes the column its full length and at the word, Form up! files inward, halts and dresses by the pivot flank. The other divisions execute the same movement in regular succession when the division of the rear has past the flanks.

Changing the rear of a column to the front, when troops are on the march, contributes greatly to their ease. Owing to the inequality of pace, in the leading divisions, the march of the rear divisions is often rendered exceedingly irregular and fatiguing; by frequent changes the burden is more equalized.

21. Change of Position in Column, by a Flank March of its Divisions. Fig. 7—Plate 3.

Commander. Column—Will Change Position—To the Alignement—On the Right!
Squad. Officers. Threes—Right Wheel—March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Commander. March!
Divis. Officers. Right Flank—Forward!
Do. Forward! Halt! Right—Dress!

Explanation.—At the caution the division of a run trot out and mark the alignement A B; the division wheel to the right by threes, officers shifting to the right.
flanks, and march to the new position, bringing forward their right flanks so far as to enter perpendicular to the new alignment, where they halt and form.

22. Increasing and Diminishing the Front of the Column on the March.

Suppose a column of division, the right in front. Commander. Form Column—Of Half Squadrons!
Squad. Officers. Form—Half Squadrons!
Officers of 2d, 4th, 6th, 8th Left—Incline! March!
Divisions.
Do. Forward—Right—Dress!

Explanation.—This movement is executed by inclining the left division of each half squadron (viz. 2, 4, 6, 8) to the left and dressing up with the right division. The 2d and 4th half squadrons may in similar manner move up to the left of the right half squadrons and form a column of squadrons.

To Diminish.
Commander. Column—Will Break Off—into Divisions!
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Break from the Left!
Left Divis. Offi. Right—Incline! March! Forward! Left—Dress!

Explanation.—At the command to break from the left, the left divisions slacken pace, and at the command, Right Incline! they incline to the right and cover the right divisions: officers take their posts on the pivot flanks.

By this method the column may diminish to sub-divisions and sections, and again form up to the front.

23. Column Filing from a Flank and Again Forming up.

Suppose from the right, when marching right in front. Commander. Column—Will File—From the Right!
Squad Officers. Halt! File from the Right!
Divis. Officers in succession.

Explanation.—The column halts, at the command by
the squadron officers; the first division then files forward from the right, by command of its officer. When the whole of the leading division is in file, the second division performs the same movement, succeeded by the others as fast as they have room. The officers march on the left of the head of their divisions, the serre files on the right; but if the ground will not permit this, officers will lead and the serre files succeed their divisions.

To Form up into Divisions.

Commander. Form Column—Of Divisions!
Squad. Officers. Form—Divisions!
Divis. Officers. Files—Left Incline! March!

Explanation.—The column is supposed to be advancing, in an extended line of files on a slow trot and coming out of a narrow pass to open ground. The squadron officers, after the caution, must give the commands, with a strong voice, to form divisions, on which the division officers will order the files of their divisions to incline to the left; the right files continue to move as before, the others move out towards the left and front, and form up with the right files; each division officer will close his division to its proper distance by moving on a brisk trot.

24. Column Marching Right in Front, Forms into Line on the Reverse Flank. Fig. 3—Plate 3.

Commander. Column—Will Form Line—On the Reverse Flank!
Squad. Officers. Form Line—On the Reverse Flank!
Divis. Officers { Division—Right Wheel!
    in succession.

Do. Forward! Halt! Right—Dress!

Explanation.—The column having arrived near the point of appui B, in the alignment C A marked by the division of appui, will receive the caution to form a line, which being repeated by squadron officers when the first division is within a few yards of the point of appui, the leader of the first division wheels his division to the right, advances up to the alignment, halts and dresses on the left of B. The succeeding divisions execute the same movement as they respectively arrive at the left flank of the last formed division which has wheeled up and
dressed on the alignment, the serre-files close up to the rear rank, turn to the right, to give room for the succeeding divisions to pass, after which they take their proper positions.

25. Open Column Forms the Oblong Square.

Fig. 4—Plate 7.

Commander. Column—Will Form—The Long Square!
Squad. Officers. Form—The Long Square!
Divis. Officers. Divisions—From Centre—Outward Wheel! March!

Do. Halt! Dress!
Commander. Column—March!
Squad. Officers. Right and Left—Turn!

Explanation.—The divisions, excepting the first and eighth which stand fast, wheel outwards by sub-divisions from the centre, halt and dress. At the command, column march! the leading division moves forward; the command, Right and Left—Turn! is given; the right flank files of the square turn to the left as far as possible, the files of the left flank turn in the same manner to the right; the files move forward as they respectively gain room, following the flanks of the leading divisions; the eighth division closes the square. Serre-file officers, sergeants and musick take post within the square.

The long square is reduced to a column of divisions as follows.

Commander. Reduce the Square!
Squad. Officers. Form—Divisions—March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Commander. Column—March!
Divis. Officers. Incline to the Centre!

Do. Forward! Left—Dress!

Explanation.—At the command by the squadron officers, to Form—Divisions! the sub-divisions of the right flank file up and form on the right of their respective left files; the sub-divisions of the left flank file up and form on the left of their respective right files. When the column moves forward, the sub-divisions of each division incline inwards, join, dress by the left, turn square to the front and march forward, the leaders regulating the distances between the divisions.
PART III.

Note.—The methods of opening and closing columns, inclining to the right and left, countermarch ing and retreating from a defile, have been explained in Part II. Other movements in column will be given in the succeeding sections, as they occur in the manoeuvres.

CHANGES OF POSITION.

Changes of position, as has already been observed, are directly to the front or rear; or, on alignements oblique to the original position, and are executed in columns, line, or the echelon march of half squadrons, divisions, sub-divisions or threes. When near an ene my, the change in echelon is deemed the most safe.

26. Echelon Change of Position, to a Parallel Alignement in Front.

Commander. The Line will Advance—in Echelon of Divisions—from the Right!

Squad. Officers. In Echelon—of Divisions—from the Right—March!

Division Officers in succession. Division—Forward—Trot!

Explanation.—At the command trot, by the right division officer, the right division trots to the front; when this division has gained wheeling distance, the second division is ordered by its officer, Forward—Trot! and it moves forward in the same manner. The remaining divisions perform the same movement as their respective right divisions gain wheeling distances. Officers take their posts on the directing flanks to conduct their divisions. The division of appui, in the mean time, gallop forward and mark the new alignement. When the line is to form, the commander orders,

Form the Line—On the Right!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Form Line—On the Right—March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Right—Dress!

Explanation.—The alignement being marked and the command given to form, the right division, on arriving at the alignement, is ordered by its leader, Halt! Right—
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 169

Dress! The division halts and dresses. The remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner as they arrive on the alignment. The officers take their posts in the line as soon as their divisions have formed. The first part of this movement is represented in Fig. 6—Plate 2, in four divisions from the left of the line.

27. ECHELLON CHANGE OF POSITION TO A PARALLEL ALIGNMENT IN FRONT, ON A CENTRAL DIVISION.

Suppose the Fourth Division.

Commander. The Line—Will Advance—In Echelon
—On the Fourth Division!

Squad. Officers. In Echelon—On the Fourth Division—
March!

Divis. Officers in succession.

Division—Forward—Trot!

Explanation.—When the command March! is given by squadron officers the fourth division leader, orders, Division—Forward—Trot! and it trots off to the front; when it has gained wheeling distance, the third and fifth divisions advance by the same command, keeping their inward flanks even with the flanks of the fourth. The remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner. When the commander chooses to form the line he orders,

Form—The Line—On the Fourth Division!

Squad. Officers. Form Line—On the Fourth Division—
March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—At the caution to form, the guides mark the alignment on which the fourth division halts and dresses when it arrives; the remaining divisions successively halt and dress as they arrive on the right and left of first formed division.

28. ECHELLON CHANGE OF POSITION ON THE RIGHT; THE LEFT BROUGHT FORWARD. Fig. 9—Plate 3.

Commander. The Line—Will Change Position—On the Right—By Echelon—Of Divisions!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right—Quarter—Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. **Halt! Dress!**
Squad. Officers. **Forward—Trot!**
Divis. Officers. **Left Flank—Forward! Halt! Dress!**

Explanation.—At the caution to change position, the division of appui mark the alignement, A B. At the command, **right half wheel**, the divisions wheel into echelon to the right, the leaders shifting to the right if not already there, the right division continues the wheel till it arrives on the alignement when its leader halts and dresses it. The remaining divisions are then put forward on the trot and as they successively arrive at the left flank of the division on their right, bring left flanks forward, advance up and dress on the alignement, the officers forming in their proper places.

**Note.**—The change on the left, the right brought forward, is executed on similar principles; the officers varying the commands accordingly.

29. **ECHELLOn CHANGE OF POSITION ON THE LEFT, THE RIGHT THROWN BACK.**

**Commander.**

- The Line—Will Change Position—On the Left—Backward—In Echelon—Of Divisions!

**Squad. Officers.**

- Threes—About—Wheel—March!

**Divis. Officers.**

- Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.**

- Divisions—Right—Quarter—Wheel—March!

**Divis. Officers.**

- Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.**

- Forward—Trot!

**Divis. Officers.**

- Left Flank—Forward! Forward! Halt! Front! Dress!

Explanation.—The division of appui mark the alignement at the caution. The whole are then put about by threes, wheeled to the right into echelon and the division on the proper left, into the alignement, marched back to the required line, where the divisions halt, front and dress.

**Note.**—The change on the right, the left thrown back, will be obvious from the above explanation. If it becomes necessary to change position on the centre by throwing back the right flank, the right squadron must be put about by threes wheeled into echelon and march-
ed back in that order; the left squadron at the same time advances in the same order and both form, as has been described, on the alignment previously marked. If the left is to be thrown back it must go about and retire while the right advances.

In the two preceding sections the change of position has been effected by the quarter wheel into echelon, and the new alignment is supposed to make with the old one an angle of about 45 degrees, producing a change less than a quarter conversion. When the angle is greater, the wheel must also be greater, and if the angle is 90 degrees the half wheel will be necessary, which readily produces a greater conversion. These principles have been more fully explained in Section 62—Part I.

30. Quarter Conversion on the Right, by Open Column. Fig. 1—Plate 11.

Commander. The Line—Will Change Position—On the Right—By Open Column—Of Divisions!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right—Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Left—Dress!
Squad. Officers. Left—Incline! March!
Divis. Officers. Forward! Halt! Right—Dress!

Explanation.—The alignment, supposed perpendicular to the front, is marked at the caution by the guides B C; the column formed by the right half wheel, and deployed to the left as in Section 12—Part III.

31. Quarter Conversion on the Left, by Open Column of Divisions. Fig. 2—Plate 10.

Commander. The Line—Will Change Position—On the Left—By Open Column—Of Divisions!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Left Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Right—Dress!
Squad. Officers. Right—Incline! March!
Divis. Officers. Forward—Halt! Left—Dress!

Explanation.—This is a change to the left on a perpendicular alignment D F; and the movement is to
32. **Quarter Conversion on the Left, the Right Thrown Back.** Fig. 3—Plate 10.

**Commander.** The Line—Will Change Position—On the Left—By Open Column of Divisions—Backward!

**Squad. Officers.** Left—Quarter Wheel! March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Left—Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Threes—Left Wheel!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** March!

**Divis. Officers.** Left Flank—Forward! Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Divisions—Right—Wheel into Line!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt—Right—Dress!

**Explanation.**—At the caution the alignment is marked by the guides K I. The divisions, excepting that on the left which stands fast, having wheeled into echelon H G, are led off by division officers, and formed into open column, halted, and dressed. The whole then wheel into line, by the quarter wheel, and dress on the new alignment K I.

**Note.** The quarter conversion on the right, the left thrown back, will be obvious from the movement above described.

33. **Change of Position in Column to a Parallel Alignment in the Rear.** Fig. 10—Plate 3.

**Commander.** The Line—Will Change Position to the Rear—In Column of Divisions—From the Right!

**Squad. Officers.** Divisions—Right—Wheel! March!

**Divis Officers.** Halt! Left—Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Column—March!

**Divis. Officers** in succession. Right—Wheel! Forward!

**Commander.** The Column—Will Form Line—On the Reverse Flank!

**Squad. Officers.** Form Line—On the Reverse—Flank!

**Divis. Officers** in succession. Right—Wheel! Forward!

**Explanation.**—The line breaks into column of divi-
sions by the wheel to the right: at the march, by squadron officers, the column moves, the leading division wheels to the right, marches to the rear followed by the remaining divisions, which wheel to the right successively on the ground on which the first wheeled. The column is then put into the trot, by the commander. When the line is to be formed, he gives the caution to form on the reverse flank, which is repeated by squadron officers, the guides mark the alignment A B, and the divisions wheel and form as directed in Section 24.

The manœuvre from the left is similar excepting that wheelings are to the left.

34. Change of Position to the Rear, by the Flank March of Divisions, by Threes.

**Commander.** The Line—Will Retire—In Open Column—By the Flank March—Of Divisions!

**Squad. Officers.** Divisions—Right Wheel—March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Left—Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Threes—Right—Wheel! March!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt—Dress!

**Commander.** March!

Do. The Column—Will Halt—And Form into Line!

**Squad. Officers.** Halt!

**Divis. Officers.** Wheel up! Halt! Dress!

**Squad. Officers.** Left—Wheel into Line!

**Divis. Officers.** Halt! Left—Dress!

**Explanation.**—The column forms by quarter wheels of divisions to the right; the divisions wheel to the right by threes and march to the rear conducted by their officers. When the caution is given to wheel into line, the guides mark the alignment and the divisions wheel to the left into line and dress on the alignment.

Changes of position may also be effected, to parallel alignment, to the front, and oblique alignments in the various directions, by movements in threes; and where the ground is uneven or covered with bushes or otherwise obstructed, they may be the most facile methods.

If the line is ordered to throw back a flank to an oblique alignment by threes, the operation will be perfect.
ly simple, provided the pivot flank is not to rest on the same point. For example. After the caution is given, the whole are wheeled to the left by threes; the left squadron is marched by threes, by bringing forward left flanks, into the alignment previously marked. The other squadron will then march, by wheeling to the left on a moveable pivot, to a point in the alignment where its right flank is to rest, where it will wheel to the right in the same manner, move to the formed squadron, halt and wheel up on the line. This may be performed by squadrons, half squadrons or divisions as the commander shall direct. The only objection to this method, is, that the left squadron will be extended to the left beyond the original flank; but this is not important when the regiment is performing independently of others. If the movement is to the front, the squadrons, half squadrons or divisions lead out to the front, in succession, the squadron nearest to the flank towards which the change is to be made, first moving and forming on the prescribed alignment.

The commands for these movements will readily occur to the intelligent officer; and, if he possess a ready coup d'œil, he will instantaneously determine on the mode of effecting the movement, whether by echelons, open columns, or threes, to the front flanks or rear, as the nature of the ground or the position of the enemy shall require.

CHANGES OF FRONT.

The change of front has been explained in Section 63 of Part I.

35. Change of Front, by Countermarch, in open Column of Divisions, from the Right Flank. Fig. 4—Plate 10.

Commander. The Line—Will Change Front—in Open Column—Of Divisions—From the Right!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right—Wheel! March!

Division Officers. Halt! Left—Dress!

Squad. Officers. Countermarch—By the Right! March!
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 173

Divis. Officers { Right—About—Wheel! Forward!
successively. Halt! Dress!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Squad. Officers. Left—Wheel into Line!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation. The line breaks into column of divisions by the right, and a marker takes post on the right flank of the first and eighth divisions, their horses facing the right. At the command countermarch, the column moves, the first division wheels till half the circle is completed, the right flank moving in a small circle round the pivot to gain a little to the rear; the succeeding divisions advance, and as they successively arrive at the right guide, wheel to the right about, following the first. When the leading division comes to the left guide it halts, and the others halt as they come up to wheeling distances. The column then wheels to the left into line; and the regiment is now facing the original rear. The movement from the left is similar.

36. Change of Front on the Centre, by the Operation of Open Column. Fig. 11—Plate 3.

Commander. The Line—Will Change Front—On the Centre—By Divisions!
Left Squad. { Left Squadron—Threes About—March!
Officer. Halt! Dress!
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Left—Wheel! March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Commander. Column—Countermarch!
Divis. Officers successively. { Left—Wheel! Halt! Dress!
Left Squad. { Left Squadron—Threes About—Halt!
Officer. Centre—Dress!

Explanation. The left squadron is put about by threes, the whole wheeled into column to the left, the two centre divisions continuing the wheel, by the repetition of the command Left Wheel! by their officers, till they arrive on the line A B. This places the three right divisions in column facing the left, in front of the line A B, and the three left divisions in column facing to the right, in the rear of A B. At the command countermarch! the
three right divisions march to the left, and as they respectively come to their places, wheel successively into line on the right of the 4th; the three left divisions, at the same time, march and wheel successively into line on the (now) right flank of the 5th division. The left squadron is now to be wheeled about by threes, and the regiment will be formed facing its former rear.

This movement is performed with great facility and expedition, and, as it requires no extension of the flanks, it may be executed by several regiments in line, without the least interference.

Note. The regiment may also change front by countermarching from the flanks by threes, as in Section 13 — Part II.

MOVEMENTS IN LINE.

The march in line to the front, is a difficult as well as important movement, and consequently requires the utmost skill and attention of officers and soldiers. The principal attention of the men will be to keep the files properly closed, the body upright, the bridle hand steady, the horses parallel, and the ranks well dressed up to the standards; which is done by an occasional glance of the eye in that direction, without the least turn of the body. They must be instructed to resist the pressure of the flanks, if it takes place, to avoid crowding to the centre, and to be silent and very attentive to the commands of theirs officers. The instructions given in No. 2 of the 19th Section of Part II, must also be carefully observed.

Each squadron regulates its dressing by its own centre and follows its own leader. "The leaders line with, preserve distances from each other, and from the regulating squadron: this alone has its object of march, the others being all subordinate to, and conforming to its motions." "Field officers and adjutants must always recollect the number of yards which the front of the regiment or any of its component parts occupy, and be enabled by the eye, as well as the paces of their horses, quickly and readily to ascertain and give such distances; and every squadron, and division leader, and marker of a pivot flank, the front of the division which he regulates."
37. ADVANCE IN LINE.

Commander. The Line—Will Advance!
Squad. Officers. Squadron—Forward—March!
Commander. The Line—Will Halt!
Squad. Officers. Halt!
Commander. Forward—Dress—By the Right Squadron!
Squad. Officers. Squadron—Forward—By the Centre—Dress!

Explanation. The right squadron is to be considered as the regulating squadron, the other will keep up with and regulate its movements by it, as simultaneously as possible. The leaders of squadrons will march a horse's length in front of their standards and advance on lines perpendicular to the front of the regiment, by selecting distant objects in the lines for points of view. At the command, to halt, and dress forward by the centre, the guides mark the alignment four or five yards in front, and the centre files advance to the alignment; the remaining files, by successive movement, march up and dress by the centre.

38. THE REGIMENT TAKES GROUND TO THE RIGHT AND FRONT, BY AN INCLINE IN ECHELON. Fig. 2.—Plate 8.

Commander. The Line—Will Incline to the Right—In Echelon—Of Divisions!
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Break off—From the Right!
Division Officers. Division—Right—Incline!
Commander. Form—The Line!
Squad. Officers. Divisions—Form Line!
Divis. Officers in succession. Forward—Dress!

Explanation. The regiment advancing in line on the walk is ordered to incline, in echelon, to the right; at the command to break off from the right, the divisions slacken pace, and break back so far as to clear the rear rank of their respective right divisions, as represented at A B; division leaders then command divisions, right incline! and the whole incline in echelon of divisions A B, to the right. When the command is given to form the line, the divisions incline on the trot, form up to the...
right and receive the command, forward—dress! The line then moves directly to the front.

Note.—The regiment, at halt, will incline in echelon formed by small wheels, as in Section 12—Part II. The movement to the left is performed on the same principles and needs no explanation.

39. Passage of Defiles.

The passage of defiles is either to the front or rear, and are executed from the flanks or a central point of the regiment or squadron. If the defile is narrow, it may be passed by filing, or by threes; if it will admit a more extensive front, by sub-divisions or divisions. In presence of an enemy the operation is critical and should be executed with as much celerity as regularity will permit; the officers will be quick in giving the commands, careful to preserve order and regularity in the movements, and lose no time in the execution. In retreat, if the enemy are pressing close upon the line, parties should be posted on each side of the débouché, and a detachment of expert skirmishers sent out to impede the enemy. If the defile be a bridge which is not firm, pressure upon it, must be avoided as much as possible, to prevent its breaking, which might destroy the regiment.

40. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Divisions from the Centre. Fig. 1—Plate 9.

Commander. The Line—Will Pass—The Defile—in Front—By Divisions—from the Centre!

Squad. Officers. Centre—Divisions—Pass the Defile—In Front!

Commanders of Centre Divis. Forward—Trot!

Right Squad. Officer. Threes—Left—Wheel! March!

Left do. Threes—Right—Wheel! March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Squad. Officers. March!

Divis. Officers in succession. Halt! Wheel up! Trot!
Commander. *Halt! Column—Will Deploy—On the Centre!*

Squad. Officers. *Right and Left—Incline!*


Explanation.—The defile is supposed to be formed by marshy ground in front of the regiment, and the de-bouche before the centre sufficient for two divisions. If the line is advancing the commander makes a momentary halt before the caution, and if necessary detaches skirmishers through the defile. The two centre divisions advance on the trot by command of the officers; the wings wheel inward by threes, march, and when third and sixth divisions meet, their officers command, *halt! wheel up! trot!* The remaining divisions advance in a similar manner. Having passed the defile the commander halts the column, directs the guides to mark the alignment, and orders the column to deploy from the centre. The two centre divisions remain on the ground, the other divisions incline outward, come up to the right and left of the centre divisions, *halt and dress.* Skirmishers are then called in by trumpet signal.

41. **Passage of A Defile in Front, by Files, from the Centre.** *Fig. 2—Plate 9.*

Commander. *The Line—Will Pass—Defile—From the Centre—By Files!*

Squadron Officers. *Squadrons—Will File—From the Centre Flanks! Trot!*

Commander. *Halt! The Line—Will Form on the Centre!*

Squad. Officers. *Form Squadrons—On the Centre Flanks—Trot!*

Explanation.—The defile is here supposed to be a bridge, too narrow for sub-divisions. Skirmishers are detached over it and the caution given to pass. At the command to *file from the centre*, four files, two on the right of the second, and two on the left of the first squadron, advance on the trot; the remaining files turn to the centre, march and follow the leading files, wheeling outward by files as they successively arrive on the ground which the centre files occupied. At the command, to *form*, guides trot out, the leading files halt on
the alignment, the others turn outward, gallop up to their places in the line and dress by the centre. The call is then sounded and the skirmishers return to their posts.

42. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Threes from the Centre.

Commander. The Line—Will Pass the Defile—By Threes—From the Centre!
Squad. Officers. Threes—To the Centre—Wheel! March!
Commander. By Column—Of Threes—March!
Squad. Officers. March!
Commander. The Line—Will Form!
Squad. Officers. Form—The Line—Trot!

Explanation.—The caution being given to pass the defile, and the command to wheel to the centre, the commander orders, by column of threes—march! The two-centre threes, which have not wheeled with the others, trot forward, those of the right and left wings move to the centre, and as they meet, wheel outward by threes, trot forward and close to the leading threes. The column will then have six horses in front, the front and rear rank threes in alternate order. When the line forms, the column halts and is ordered to form the line; the threes of the right wing incline on the trot to the right, and those of the left, to the left and form on the alignment, previously marked. The front part of Fig. 3—Plate 9, represents this formation on the line A B.

43. Passage of a Defile in Front, by Threes, from a Flank.

Suppose the right.

Commander. The Line—Will Pass Defile—By Threes—From the Right!
Commander. Right—Flank—Forward! Forward! Halt!
Do. The Line—Will Form!
Squad. Officers. On the Right—Form Squadrons—March!
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 181

Explanation.—The defile is supposed to open near the right flank of the line; the whole wheel to the right by threes, and at the command, Right Flank—Forward! the leading threes wheel to the left on a moveable pivot till square to the front, when the command forward! puts the column in direct march. Having passed the defile, the column is halted, the line ordered to form, and guides sent out. The leader of the first division commands, threes—left—wheel up! division—right—wheel! halt! dress! the division wheels to the right and halts on the alignment. When the threes of the second division, arrive in the rear of the first, the division officer commands, left—wheel up! forward—trot! left flank—forward! halt! right—dress! These movements being executed, brings the second division on to the alignment, on the left of the first. The remaining divisions proceed in a similar manner, when they successively arrive in the rear of the right division. The movement from the left flank is performed on the same principles.

Note.—If the defile will admit the front of a sub-division, the line may break into column to the right, pass by sub-divisions and form by successive wheels and march of the sub-divisions along the rear opposite their places in the new alignment, where they wheel and form by inverse formation, as in Section 24—Part III.

This defile may also be passed by files from a flank, and the line formed by filing up to their places, by successive movement.

44. PASSAGE OF A DEFILE, IN THE REAR, BY THREES. Fig. 3—Plate 9.

Commander. The Line—Will Pass the Defile—in the Rear—From the Flanks—By Threes!

Squad. Officers. From the Flanks—By Threes—Pass the Defile—In the Rear! Trot!

Commander. Column—Halt! Form the Line!
Squad Officers. Threes—About—Wheel—March! Form the Line—Trot!

Explanation.—The line is supposed to be formed...
at A B, in front of a defile in the rear and it becomes necessary to pass it, and take a position in the rear. The commander will detach skirmishers forward, to keep back the enemy and cover the movement. He then gives the caution to pass from the flanks; the squadron officers give the command to pass the defile by threes; the right and left flanks go about and trot off to the rear, making a sharp incline to the centre; till they meet, when they turn and trot through the defile. In the mean time the two next flank threes go about, trot off in the same manner and close up to the leading threes. The remaining threes, execute the same movement, in succession, and follow in close column of threes, the front and rear rank threes being in alternate order, the column six horses in front. The rear having cleared the defile the commander orders the line to form, the guides mark the alignment, and squadron officers order, threes—about—wheel! march! form the line—trot! The threes of the right wing incline on the trot, to the right, the left threes to the left and come up and dress on the new alignment.

When the threes retire from the flanks and form in column, the serrefiles retire, with the last three of their respective divisions, and form on the outward flanks, and when the line forms, they take their usual position.

Note.—If the defile is behind a flank, the line may wheel into open column towards the defile, wheel off to the rear, pass it, and come into line by inverse formation. (See Section 24.) Or, the line may file off from the flank before the defile, to the rear, and form up by successive wheel of files on reverse flanks.

45. Passage of Obstacles.

In advancing in line, obstructions will frequently present themselves before some part of it and impede its march. If the obstruction be small the impeded files break back without a command, turn outward from the centre and follow by files the uninterrupted part of the line, on the right and left, as described in the Section 36—Part II.

When the obstructing body is large and impedes a considerable proportion of the line, it must be passed by
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

forming into column the part impeded, by a halt and quarter wheel to the right or left. This must be executed by command. For example: suppose the right squadron is impeded, (Fig. 1—Plate 12) the commander of that squadron orders, Squadron—Halt—Divisions (or) Sub-divisions—Left—Wheel! March! The division leaders halt and dress their divisions: the command March! puts the column in motion to the left, and the divisions wheel to the right successively, behind the flank of the uninterrupted part of the line, and as the ground opens, form up by successive inclines, or echelon marches to the right, See A, Fig. 1. If the left flank is interrupted, as in Fig. 2—Plate 11, the column forms on that flank; if both flanks (as in Fig. 6—Plate 10) two columns must be formed, one on each flank, and the uninterrupted part of the line will move directly forward in a steady and uniform pace. If the whole line is obstructed it will form column, by wheeling to the right or left, and march in that order till the obstruction is passed, and deploy as shall be ordered.

MOVEMENTS IN ATTACK AND DEFENCE.

The movements in the preceding Sections are such as are necessary for the squadron and regiment in their first lessons. We come now to their application and to such other movements as are necessary for attack and defence. Here it should be observed, that though the troops may get a little deranged or be compelled to vary in some instances from the methods laid down for the field movements, they are not to consider themselves disqualified for acting, and fall into confusion, and quit the field, as is sometimes the case with young troops, who have been habituated only to the straight lines and other minutiae of the parade.

"It is to be lamented," says an able officer, "that men are brought on service without being informed of the uses of the different manoeuvres they have been practising; whence having no ideas of any thing but the uninterrupted strictness of the parade, they instantly fall into disorder and confusion, when they lose their accustomed regularity." By teaching them the uses of the manoeuvres, they will acquire a confidence when in
action, from knowing themselves in a position, the
strength and advantages of which have been explained
to them by their officers.

The charge, as has been observed, is the most impor-
tant and difficult of all cavalry movements, and must be
executed with precision and celerity.

"In charging infantry if the ground is open and level,
the line should begin to gallop at three hundred yards
from the enemy, in order to receive as few fires as pos-
sible." At the instant of the shock, the body must be
well back, the horse unrestrained by the bitt, and the
spurs applied to his sides when he slackens his speed. If
on the shock a momentary derangement take place, and
the charge is successful, the line will instantly dress up
by the standards and pursue in line; or detach from the
flanks and pursue, *pell mell*, as the commander may
judge proper.

"In charging cavalry, when a formidable fire is not
to be expected, the line need not begin to gallop till
within 80 or 100 yards of the enemy, in order that the
horses may arrive in wind and full vigor when they
shock with the opposing body." When the line is near
the horses must accelerate their movement and dash up-
on the enemy with all possible speed.

All charges are to be made with swords drawn, col-
ours flying and the trumpets sounding the charge. No
officer should presume to fire, while in close order of
two ranks, unless there is the most pressing neces-

ty for it, which seldom happens, but should fall upon the
enemy sword in hand. There is little hope of success
from cavalry who commence their attack with the fire
of carabines or pistols. It is by the *right use* of the
sword that they are to expect victory. By this mode of
attack a body of cavalry will generally rout one that
depends on the pistol for defence. But it is not to be
inferred from hence, that this is a useless weapon; so
far from this, it should be considered a very important
one, when rightly applied, which is principally to skir-
rish in detached parties, to annoy the enemy in their
approach to the main body, cover retreats, &c.

The officers must always endeavor to commence the
attack, and not wait to be attacked, unless circumstan-
ces imperiously demand it; they are to encourage the
men to keep a good countenance, and persuade them that the enemy are inferior in prowess; they should charge them in the strictest terms not to spare the enemy while they resist, but to destroy as many as they possibly can, and when resistance ceases and their arms are surrendered, the greatest mercy must be shewn to the vanquished.

During the action the men are to be silent and extremely attentive to the commands of their officers; but if the commander deems it proper, the whole line may give a loud huzza! which must be done only by his order, and by a preconcerted signal. This is sometimes practised, from an idea that it keeps up the spirits of the men, by preventing them from reflecting on their danger, and damps the ardor of the enemy.

All officers in the cavalry may be assured that there are only two certain methods of defeating an enemy in the open field. The first is by attacking with the utmost impetuosity; the other by out-flanking him. It must therefore be a standing maxim and upon all occasions the principal object, to gain the advantage, if possible, of attacking in flank, and to shock him with the utmost force and impetuosity.

"It cannot be too often inculcated, that the effect of the charge depends very considerably on the attention and steadiness of the leaders of squadrons. The best troops will fall into confusion if badly led." The standards must always be carried upright, in order to facilitate the moving and dressing of the line; and the bearers must keep well up to the leaders, and advance on a line at right angles with the front of the regiment or squadron. The men will be attentive to the movement of the standards of their squadron, keep up in line, their horses under the command of the bit and spur, perfectly square to the front, and themselves well balanced in their saddles.

"When the charge is successful, and the enemy broken, the flank divisions, or any portion of the line local circumstances may require, should be ordered to disperse and pursue."

"It will generally be advisable in case of pursuit, to keep a central squadron or division formed. This will not only tend to prevent the broken enemy from rallying..."
ing, but will serve as a point for the pursuers to form to, in case it should be necessary to recall them, or to take charge of any prisoners who may be brought in.”

46. Attack in Line to the Front.

Commander. The Line—Will attack—To the Front!
Squad. Officers. Squadron—Forward—March! Trot
Canter! Charge!

Commander. The Line will Halt!
Squad. Officers. Slow Trot! Halt!

Explanation.—The line is supposed to be at the halt when the caution is given, and the right squadron that of direction. The line advances on the trot and is put into a canter, after proceeding about 20 yards; this pace is continued till the charge is ordered, when it increases to full speed, the trumpets in the rear sounding the charge at the same time, and during the attack. Swords are brought to the guard, the points a little forward and elevated, and, on coming up to the enemy, spurs are applied, and the horses dash full vigor upon the enemy. At the command Slow—Trot! the whole fall into that pace, bringing the swords to the carry, and halt at the command by the squadron officers. If a correct dressing be required, the commander will order the guides to mark the alignment, the standard to advance up to it, and the line to dress up by the standards.

If the enemy is broken and retreat in confusion, the line may continue the charge without halting or dressing; or, the flank divisions may advance and pursue pell-mell, as described Section 21—Part II.

47. The Regiment Retires in Line:

Commander. The Line—Will Retire!
Squad. Officers. Threes—About—Wheel—March!
Halt! Dress!

Do, Forward—Trot!

Commander. The Line—Will Halt and Front!
Squad. Officers. Halt! Threes About! Wheel—Halt!
Dress!

Explanation.—At the caution, trumpets sound retreat. The command Threes—About, &c. is given, and the
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 187

squadrons go about by threes, halt and dress; the standards taking the places of their covering corporals, who rein back into the front rank. The line then trots to the rear, lead by the standards and serenfies, who must move on perpendicular lines. The march will be continued till the commander orders the halt and front, when the regiment is brought about by threes, and the standards take their former posts. If much out of dress, the commander will direct the division of appui to mark a new alignment in front, and order up the standards for dressing points, and the regiment will file up from the centre of each squadron, and dress by the standards.

48. ATTACK IN ECHELLON OF HALF-SQUADRONS TO THE FRONT. Fig. 6, Plate 2.

Commander. The Line — Will Attack — By Half-Squadrions — From the Left!

Squad. Officers. Attack — By Half Squadrons — From the Left!

Half Squadron Officers in succession.

Half Squadron — Forward — Trot! Canter! Charge!

Do. Slow — Trot! Halt!

Explanation. — At the command, half squadron — trot! &c. the left half squadron of the left squadron advances and attacks sword in hand; the next half squadron advances to the attack when the leading one is 20 or 30 yards from the enemy and the remaining half squadrons follow, each charging to its front, in regular succession, when its succeeding half squadron is within the same distance of the enemy.

The line is formed, by halting the left half squadron and dressing up the remaining half squadrons on a new alignment.

Note. — The attack in echelon is generally reckoned more safe than in line. If the first charge is unsuccessful the remaining part of the line may halt and retire; or, remain refused, to cover the retreat of the first assailants. If the first attack breaks the enemy, the following half squadrons will advance with more confidence of success; and, should the case require it, an oblique line is readily formed to attack in another direction.
49. THE REGIMENT RETIRES IN ECHELON, FROM THE LEFT, AND FORMS OBLIQUE LINE TO THE LEFT. Fig. 2—Plate 12.

Commander.  

The Line—Will Retire—in Echelon—From the Left—By Half Squadrons!

Squad. Officers. Retire—in Half Squadrons—From the Left...

Half Squadron Officers in succession.

\[ \text{Threes—About Wheel! March! Halt! Dress!} \]

Do.  

Forward—Trot!

Commander.  

Halt! And Form—Oblique Line—To the Left!

Squad. Officers.  

Halt! Left—Half Wheel! March!

Half Squadron Officers.  

\[ \text{Halt! Left—Dress!} \]

Do.  

Left—Incline—March! Forward! Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—The left half squadron retires on the trot after going about by threes; the other half squadrons retire successively, in the same manner, when their respective left half squadrons have gained wheeling distances to the rear. At the caution to form oblique line to the left, squadron officers halt in echelon A B, and half wheel the half squadrons to the left. Guides then mark the alignment, and the half squadrons march up to it, inclining to the left, and dress by the left half squadron. When the caution is given to retire, the trumpets will sound the retreat, on which the squadron officers give their commands.

Note.—This formation places the line in a position to charge an enemy who may threaten the left flank of the echelon A B, while retiring.

The line may, on similar principles, retire from the right flank and form oblique line to the right.

50. ATTACK BY THE TWO CENTRE DIVISIONS; THE REMAINING DIVISIONS SUPPORTING IN ECHELON. Fig. 3—Plate 12.

Commander.  

The Line—Will Attack—By Centre Divisions—The Flank Divisions—
Support in Echelon!


Flank Divis. Officers in succession. Division—Forward—Trot!

Officer of Centre Divisions. Canter! Charge! Slow—Trot! Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—At the command to attack by centre divisions, the two centre divisions advance on a trot under the direction of the senior officer; the flank divisions move forward in succession at the command of their respective officers, forming the two flank echelons A B and C D. The centre divisions then canter and charge the enemy. The divisions in echelon will increase their pace and keep their relative distances as nearly as possible and be ready to form up on the flanks, in line with the centre divisions: or to halt and form obliquely for flank attacks.

This mode of attack is proper, where a body of small front is to be charged, and it is necessary to guard the flanks against any covering parties of the enemy on the right and left. Should the enemy appear suddenly on the right, the divisions in echelon on the right will be halted and an oblique line formed on the principles of the movement in the last section. If on the left, a line may be instantly formed for an attack in that direction: Or one echelon may be brought up into line with the centre divisions, by a halt of those divisions, and the other flank kept refused in echelon, as circumstances require.

The line is formed from the position A B, C D, by advancing up the divisions in echelon and dressing on the centre division. Or the formation may be on the two flank divisions A, B, by wheeling the advanced divisions about by threes, marching back and dressing with them.

51. The Regiment Retires in Column of Fours, from the Flanks of the Squadrons. Fig. 4—Plate 12.

Commander. The Line will Retire—In Columns
PART III.

of Fours—From the Flanks of Squadrons!

Squad. Officers. From Flanks of Squadrons—Form Columns—Of Fours—In the Rear! March!

Explanation.—At the command to form columns in the rear, the files of each squadron turn outward from the centre; the right and left file in each, wheel off in succession, march along the rear till they meet, turn to the left and march off in column of fours to the rear, lead by the squadron officers. The serre-files fall in on the rear of their respective divisions, and march in the column.

The line is again formed by halting, turning about and filing up to the marked alignment A B, by the command

Halt! Form Squadron—Trot!

Note. This mode of retiring is necessary where the ground in the rear is broken; or where it is necessary to pass a wood, which prevents the movement in line or larger columns.

52. ATTACK TO THE FRONT AND PURSUIT FROM THE FLANKS.

The regiment charges in line, as directed in Section 46, and is supposed to repulse the enemy. The commander gives the following caution,

Commander. Flank Half Squadrons—Will Disperse and Pursue!

Squad. Officers. Flank Half Squadrons—Disperse and Pursue! Trot!

Explanation. This movement is similar to that described in the movements of the Troop, Section 21—Part II, excepting that part of the line (viz. the two centre half squadrons) continues formed, and moves forward in the walk to support the attacking party. At sounding the rally the skirmishers return on the gallop and form in their original places.

53. SKIRMISHING.

Commander. The Flank—Divisions—Will Advance and Skirmish!
Squad. Officers. Flank Divisions—March!

Explanation. The flank divisions move forward and receive the command from their officers, To the Centre—Extend! By a sharp incline the files extend inwards till they join, when the whole halt! by command. The front rank is then ordered to advance on the canter and skirmish with the enemy, as has been described, page 129. If the regiment retires, the skirmishers also retire by ranks, covering the rear; if the regiment halts, or advances, they halt and advance on the enemy as before. Parties may also be detached from the flanks to support the skirmishers while engaged. The attack will be continued till the commander directs the trumpet signal to call in skirmishers to be sounded, on which they return and form on the flanks of the regiment.

Skirmishers are necessary in most movements of attack, to cover them from the enemy's advanced parties.

54. Passage of a Line of Infantry, by Threes from the Centre, and Charge to the Front. Fig. 3—Plate 8.

Commander. By Column of Threes—From the Centre—Pass the Infantry!

Squad. Officers. Threes—Centre Wheel—March!

Do. Halt! Dress!

Do. In Column of Threes—Trot!

Explanation. The regiment is supposed to be formed 300 or 200 yards in the rear of a line of infantry A B, engaged with the enemy in front, and it is ordered forward to make a charge. At the command to wheel to the centre by threes, the wings wheel inward, the two centre threes stand fast; at the command Column of threes—trot! the two centre threes trot forward; the remaining threes march and wheel in the centre; the next threes in each rank wheel up and advance, closing up to the leading threes. The succeeding threes wheel and advance in a similar manner, when they meet in the centre. The serpents follow in the rear. The column is now formed six horses in front, each front rank three succeeded by its proper rear rank three, and ready to deploy by a momentary operation. The col-
umn, lead by the commander, with squadron officers on the flanks, having arrived at the infantry, will pass an interval between the battalions; or if the column presents against any part of the line where there is no interval, the infantry will open a passage by wheeling one or two Platoons outwards, as at C and D. The cavalry will then pass the infantry and the commander will order—*The line will form!* Squadron officers order *Form the line—brisk trot!* The threee form by inclining out on the dotted lines (Fig. 3.) and dress up with the centre.

The line then charges sword in hand, and if successful, may pursue from the flanks *pell-mell*, or otherwise as circumstances may require.

This movement may also be executed from one or both flanks; but the formation of the line on the centre is more expeditious and ought generally to be preferred.

55. **Passage of a Line of Infantry. by Filing from the Right of Half Squadrons.** Fig. 4—Plate 8.

**Commander.**

*By Files—From Right of Half Squadrons—Pass the Infantry!*

**Squad. Officers.**

*Right of Half Squadrons—File to Front—Trot!*

**Half Squad. Officers.**

*Files—Right—Turn! Trot!*

**Explanation.** The regiment is supposed in the position described in the last manœuvre, and the ground partially covered with brush, trees, &c. or so broken as to render it difficult to advance, but with small front. At the command to *File to front!* the half squadron officers order, *Files—right! turn!* The right two files of each half squadron trot forward, the other turn to the right, and by successive movement, file off and follow the leading men, the commanders of half squadrons at the head of their columns. On coming up to the infantry A B, their officers wheel out a few files in front of each column through which the half squadrons proceed towards the enemy. The commander then orders, *the line—will form!* The squadron officers order, *form the line—brisk trot!* The heads of the column slacken
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

pace, the other files turn to left, trot up, form and dress on the heads of the columns. The line is then ordered to charge as has been explained, and will make such other movements as the nature of the case may require.

Note. This movement may also be made from the flanks of the line, squadrons or divisions, the officers at head of the columns, observing to lead off perpendicular to the front, and preserve their proper distances from each other that the line may be formed without delay. These movements are often necessary for cavalry when advancing in line and the ground becomes broken, or partially covered with bushes; or when many small files present in front of the line. From these positions the regiment may, with facility, form one column of files to either flank and pass a defile. Suppose the regiment advancing in four columns of files, as represented in Fig. 4—Plate 8, and a defile presents on the right. The front columns moves through, the others halt, the heads then wheel, on moveable pivots, to the right, and follow the right column, in their proper order, through the defile. They then wheel to the left in the same manner, take their distances, march up and dress with the right column, and continue the march as before—See Fig. 5—Plate 12. Should it become necessary, a change of position may be effected in this order. If to the right, the right column will circle round to the right on a moveable pivot into the required direction, the others wheel in the same manner on concentric arcs till they come up into the required direction (Fig. 6—Plate 12) when the whole move to the front. The movement to the left is performed on the same principles, and both must be regulated by the commanding officer, aided by the division of appui.

These movements in file are well adapted to the pursuit of a retreating enemy. The columns may advance over almost any ground, on a gallop, preserve the greatest regularity and form up into line, at any point, with facility and expedition.

56. ATTACK OF INFANTRY, PART OF THE LINE THROWN INTO COLUMN. Fig. 2—Plate 11.

Commander. Left Squadron—Will form Open Column.
PART III.

Of Divisions—On its Right Flank!


Left Divisions—Form Open Column—On the Fifth! Right Incline!

Forward—Trot!

Explanation. A line of infantry is supposed to be drawn up with its right wing covered by a morass or other obstruction, and its left appuied on a similar obstruction, which prevents it from being turned, and it is found necessary to attack. The line advances directly forward; the left squadron is ordered to form open column behind the fifth division, by inclining to the right; when the sixth covers the fifth, its leader commands forward! and it trots forward behind the fifth; the sixth, seventh and eighth form in a similar manner, and follow the fifth in open column. The whole are then ordered to charge, the right squadron straight forward; the divisions in column, wheel to the left and charge down the enemy's flank, and if successful may disperse and pursue. If the charge proves unsuccessful the regiment may retire à la debandade, out of the enemy's fire, by the trumpet signal retreat, and form, fronting the enemy, by trumpet signal, as directed for a single troop, No. 2, Section 21—Part II.

This mode of attack may be practised against a supposed left flank of the enemy.

57. Attack in Double Column from the Centre, upon a Line of Infantry Whose Wings Are Covered. Fig. 6—Plate 10.

This attack is made on a line of infantry posted at A B, beyond a defile, both flanks being secured from a direct charge. The defile sufficiently wide to admit two divisions in front.

Explanation. The column forms on the centre divisions (4th and 5th) by inclining inwards, as in Sec. 14—Part III: Or, by the wheels of threes or divisions to the centre, and successive wheels and movement to the front, the serreholes behind their divisions. The commander then orders, The column will charge—to the front! Division officers order, Trot! Canter! Charge! The
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

Command must be given distinct, with spirit and as nearly simultaneous as possible, that every part of the column may advance at the same instant. If the left divisions break through the enemy's line, the left divisions wheel to the left, the right divisions to the right, and charge vigorously down the flanks; and if successful, disperse and pursue any who may attempt to escape. If the charge is unsuccessful, the whole will return, a la debandade, by the trumpet signal, retreat, out of the fire of the enemy and form in line.

58. The Regiment advancing to attack the enemy's right, is obstructed, takes ground to the right, and charges the left flank.

If this is performed in presence of cavalry, the movement may be made to the right, in an oblique echelon of divisions, as has been explained, Section 12—Part II, from which the line may be formed to the front by a quick movement, should they advance to attack. But if in presence of infantry, it should be executed by halting, out of the reach of their fire, forming column on the right, marching by a flank, till opposite the left flank, deploying to the left and then charging; On coming up to the left of the enemy, the line may form, single potence, as in Section 60—Part III.

59. The Regiment advancing in line, passes broken ground, and charges in line.

The regiment is supposed to be moving up to the enemy in line, and meets with broken ground over which it is difficult to pass in line. The commander orders, The Line—Will File—From the Right—Of Half Squadrons!

Squad. Officers. Right of Half Squadrons—File to the Front!

Divis. Officers. Files—Right Turn! Trot!

Explanation. The right half squadrons file to the front, as directed in Section 55 of this Part, and pass the obstruction. The commander then orders the line to form, which being executed, as in Section 55, he charges the enemy in full speed.
PART III.

Note. Skirmishers are indispensably necessary to precede the line, and clear the ground from any small detachments in front and mark the movement.

60. ATTACK IN FRONT AND FLANK IN SINGLE POTENCE. Fig. 7—Plate 12.

Commander. The Right Squadron—Will form Column—Of Divisions—in the Rear of the Fourth!

Right Squad.
Officer.

Officers of wheeled Divis.
Do.

Left Squad.
Officer.

Divis. Officers. Commander.
Do.

Right Squad.
Officer.

Explanation. The right squadron forms close column in the rear of the fourth division, by the flank march of threes, on the principles explained in the formation of columns. This position is represented at A. The command is then given forward—trot! Having arrived within 60 or 80 yards of the enemy, the command is given to form for flank attack! the three right divisions in column, wheel by threes to the right, and at march, canter off and deploy into the position B, against the left flank of the enemy, by bringing forward the right flanks and slackening of pace by the 3d, 2d, and 1st divisions successively. The divisions of the right then move up and dress by the third. The commander then directs the charge to be sounded, and the whole advance in single potence, and attack the front and flanks; the flank divisions circling round and attacking, at the same time, in the rear. This attack is proper against infantry in open level ground, when their left flank is unsupported; and if quickly executed by well disciplined cavalry, and the commander of the infantry is ignorant of the methods of securing his flank, or is tardy in his
movements, generally succeeds. But if the attack is unsuccessful, the retreat must be sounded, on which the whole retire; the flank divisions making a circular retreat in echelon to their places on the right of the line. The movement from the left is clearly indicated by the above explanation.

61. Regiment marching right in front by files, forms two lines for a front attack. Fig. 8—Plate 12.

Commander. Form open Column—Of Divisions—
And deploy to the left! on the First
and Fifth!

Squad. Officers. Form—Divisions—March!
Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!
Squad. Officers. Deploy—On the First and Fifth!
Do. Left—Incline! March!

Divis. Officers forward—Halt! Right—Dress!

Explanations. The regiment is supposed to be filing along a narrow road, which has plain ground to the left, the right secured by a pond, and the approach of the enemy is discovered. The command is given to form divisions! the right file of each division slackens pace, the other quarter turn to the left and file up on the trot, dressing with the right flank file; the rear rank man of each right file falls back and covers his front rank man. At the command left—incline! march! the column deploys to the left, on the front and fifth division, forming two lines. The first squadron may now charge to the front and the other remain for a line of support, to act as the commander shall order. If he finds it necessary to extend the line to the left, the second squadron may incline in echelon or wheel into echelon, take ground to the left and form on the left of the first squadron.

Note. If the ground is open on each flank, the column may form as above described, and deploy into two lines, on a central division, to be named in each squadron, which will form two lines across the road. If the left flank is covered the deployment must be to the right on the fourth and rear divisions, which will form two.
lines on the right of the road. All these deployments are made on the principles laid down in the sections which treat of the formation and deployment of columns.

If a regiment is filing by the right and the enemy appear on the left flank, the divisions file up into column and wheel into line to the left. If on the right flank, form up into column as before and form line on the reverse flank as in Section 24, of this Part. Or if the enemy approach suddenly, form a column and wheel the divisions into line to the right, and attack in reverse order. If time will not permit of this movement, halt and turn files to the right and attack with the rear rank in front. But this can seldom be necessary, for no prudent officer will permit the enemy to attack him, without some previous notice of their approach.

Should a regiment, filing right in front, be threatened suddenly in the rear, the files may turn to the left about, form up into a column on the left flank of divisions and form two lines, by deploying to the right or left, on the principles above described, as the nature of the case may require.

These sudden movements furnish opportunities for a commanding officer to display his genius, in the choice of manoeuvres and positions. If he possess a ready coup d'œil, he will almost without reflection, determine on such as the nature of the ground and other circumstances require, and be able to make an ingenious attack or retreat.

62. THE REGIMENT IN LINE, THE FRONT RANK ATTACKS WITH PISTOL, THE REAR SUPPORTS WITH SWORDS.

Commander. The Line—Will Advance and Fire!
Squad. Officers. Front Rank—Ready—Aim—Fire!
Do. Forward—Trot!—Charge!

Explanation. On the command to make ready, the front rank place swords in the bridle hand, and make ready as taught in Section 33—Part I. The rank then fires, at the command aim! fire! recovers sword, and the whole charge to the front. The line is then halted and dressed by order of the commander.

Note. This mode of attack may be necessary in
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT.

pursuing a line of cavalry on the retreat; but is seldom to be resorted to in an attack upon infantry, excepting when they are broken and retreating in disorder.

63. ATTACK BY RIGHT SQUADRON, THE LEFT SUPPORTS IN COLUMNS. Fig. 10—Plate 12.

Commander. Left Squadron—Will form Column—
Of Sub-divisions—On the Flanks!
Left Squad. Officer. Form Column—Of Sub-divisions—In
rear of the Flanks!
Left Divis. Officers of Threes—Left Wheel! March! Halt! Dress!
Left Sqd. Right do. of do. Threes—Right Wheel! March! Halt! Dress!
Left Squad. Officer. Sub-divisions—March! Halt!
Right Do. Squadron—March!
Left Do. Columns—Threes—Right Wheel!
Sub-divis. Do. Hal! Dress!
Left Sqd. Do. Columns—Cover the Flanks of Right
Squadron—March!
Sub-divis. Do. Hal! Wheel up! Dress!
Commander. Forward—Trot! Canter! Charge!

Explanation. The left squadron forms close column of sub-divisions A, B, in rear of the first and eighth, which stands fast, by wheeling of threes outward from the centre, breaking back by the incline and moving into the rear of those sub-divisions. The right squadron is then marched forward, about six yards and halted, and the columns by a flank march take ground to the right and cover the two flanks of the right squadron. The commander then orders the charge to be executed; the columns following on a brisk trot and opening to wheeling distance. The charge completed, the right squadron halts, and the columns, which will be some distance in the rear, fall into the walk.

64. THE REGIMENT RETIRES IN TWO LINES. Fig. 8—Plate 12.

Commander. The Regiment—Will Retire—In two Lines!
Right Squad. Officer. Threes About! March! Halt! Dress! Forward—Trot!

Left Squad. Officer. Column—Deploy to the Centre!

Sub-division Officers. Incline to the Centre! March! Forward! Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—The second squadron is in column in the rear of the flanks of the right squadron, as in the last manœuvre and at a halt. The latter goes about by threes, by order of its officer, retires on the trot, passing the columns, the flanks breaking by files to the rear as in passing obstacles, and having gained about 100 yards, halts and fronts. The second squadron then goes about by threes and retires in line, and having arrived within about 30 yards it receives the command, from the flanks—file to front—canter! The files halt, turn outward from the centre and file round the flanks of the right squadron, proceed about 100 yards, and at the command, form squadron! file inward and forms up in line, the flanks falling into the walk at the same time. The squadron then halts, fronts and dresses by command of its officer. The right squadron then goes about, retires in line and files round the flanks of the first, and forms 100 yards in the rear in a similar manner. And thus the squadrons continue the retreat alternately covering each other, as far as the commander shall think proper. When the retreat ceases, the left squadron should be in the rear, ready to form up to its place in the line, or to execute any ordered movement.

Note.—If the commander deems it necessary to repeat the charge, which is supposed to have proved unsuccessful in the last movement, he will form a line of impression as in the following Section.

65. Attack to the Front, in Line of Impression.

Commander. Form Line—Of Impression!

Left Squadron Officer. Squadron—Close to the Front! March!

Commander. Forward—Trot! Canter—Charge! Slow—Trot! Halt!

Explanation.—At the command to close to the front,
the left squadron, which is supposed to be some distance in the rear, marches and closes to the distance of a horse's length of the rear rank, of the right squadron. The leaders of squadron take the place of the standards in the front rank, the latter falling back into the rear rank, and the coverers of the standards, to the serrefiles. The serrefiles of the front squadron turn outward, from the centre, file off by the flanks, into the rear of the left squadron and form a division on the rear of each flank in single file. The line then, four deep, charges to the front as shall be ordered. If the shock break the enemy's line, the front squadron may pursue pell mell, and the rear squadron, trot after as a line of support. If the charge is unsuccessful the rear squadron goes about and retires; and the retreat may be made as in the last section.

46. REGIMENT RETIRES IN THE CHEQUERED RETREAT OF DIVISIONS. Fig. 8—Plate 10.

Commander. The Line—Will Retire—By Alternate Divisions!

Squad. Officers. Left Division—Of Half Squadrons—Threes About! March!

Left Division
Officers.

Halt! Dress!

Squad. Officers. Forward—Trot!

Left do. Halt! About—Wheel! March!

Left Division
Officers.

Halt! Dress!

Right Squad.
Officer.

Divisions—About Wheel! March!

Right Divis.
Officers.

Halt! Dress!

Do. Forward—Trot!

Do. Halt! About Wheel! March!

Do. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—At the command, left divisions—of half squadrons—threes about—march! the 2d, 4th, 6th, and 8th, go about, halt and dress. The command is then given, forward—trot! the divisions trot to the rear, under the direction of their officers, about 100 yards, where the left squadron officer commands, halt! about
Wheel! march! and the division officers, halt! dress! The right squadron officer then puts about the remaining divisions (viz. 1st, 3d, 5th, and 7th,) and orders them to trot forward. They move through the intervals of the first retired divisions, about 100 yards, where the right squadron officer brings them about by threes, and their leaders halt and dress them on a line. The retreat is then to be continued as far as the commander shall direct, which being completed, he orders the line to be formed, and the divisions in the rear, trot up to those most retired and form the line.

Great attention must be paid to the intervals: the leaders of divisions will conduct them on lines perpendicular to the alignment, and if, from the nature of the ground or other cause, they find them too near, the divisions on the right or left must incline till they have their proper distances.

A strong party of skirmishers are necessary in this movement, as well as most others, in retiring from the enemy, to check their pursuit.

67. Retreat of the Line by the Wheel of Divisions. Fig. 7—Plate 10.

Commander. The Divisions—Will Wheel About—
And Retire in Line!

Squad. Officers. Divisions—Right About—Wheel! March!

Divis. Officers. Forward—Trot!

Commander. The Line—Will Halt and Form!

Squad. Officers. Halt!

Do. Divisions—Right About—Wheel! March!

Divis. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Explanation.—This is a very simple movement, and when the enemy are at a distance, is performed with security, and perhaps is preferable to going about by threes.

The caution being given, the divisions are ordered, by the squadron officers, to wheel about, which being executed the line trots off, dressing by the standards. The formation to the front is by wheeling almost in the same manner, halting and dressing, by command of division officers.

A variety of other movements for attack and defence
might be added; but it is presumed that from those laid
down the skilful officer will be able to deduce all such
as will be called for on any emergency. It is left to his
judgment, to vary and combine them, and to invent
such others as the nature of the case and circumstances
of ground, which are almost infinitely various, may de-
mand.

68. Trumpet and Bugle Soundings.

The trumpet or bugle soundings, sometimes called de-
mit vocals, are divided into soundings for exercise and
movements, and those for duty in camp and garrison.

The soundings for exercise and movement, are to be
given in aid of the voice for detached parties in extend-
ed lines and quick movements; but are seldom wholly
substituted for them. The trumpeters must be well
versed in the soundings, quick in giving them when or-
dered, and always able to determine instantly which
are adapted to any movement, that may be ordered by
the commanding officer.

Sounds for Exercise and Movement.

1. The March.
2. Trot.
3. Gallop or Canter.
4. Charge.
5. Halt.
6. Retreat.
7. Rally.
8. Turn out Skirmishers.
9. Skirmishers cease Firing.
10. Call in Skirmishers.

The march is sounded when a body is to move from
the ground and is to accompany the caution of the com-
mander. Example. The Line—(or) Column—Will Ad-
vance! Trumpets sound the march, but the body will not
move till the word march is given by the squadron offi-
cers. This will aid the commander in communicating
the caution to the squadron officers, and they will make
the movement although they have not distinctly heard
the caution.
PART III.

The trot, gallop and charge, will be given when body is moving, by direction of the commander, and be instantly followed by the commands for the movement, by the proper officer. The charge is to be continued by all the trumpets, during the charge, unless otherwise ordered.

The halt is sometimes used as a signal to halt, without the voice, but this should always instantly follow. Example. Suppose a body advancing or retiring, on the gallop or full speed: the commander directs the signal halt, each officer instantly gives the word halt with an elevated voice.

The retreat, is given at the caution of the commander, in which the officers directing the several parts of the line will instantly give the words.

The rally, is used to form a body, which has been broken, or is retreating by order of the commander.

Turn out skirmishers, is given by direction of the commander, when they are to advance on the enemy: and the proper officers will direct the movement, without delay.

Call in skirmishers. This signal is given by order of the commander, and will be repeated by the trumpeter or trumpeters, with the skirmishers. It is to call them back to the body from which they were detached.

Skirmishers cease firing. This signal is given to direct the skirmishers to cease firing and must be repeated by the advanced trumpeters. The skirmishers are not to return at this signal but remain advanced near the enemy.

All signals given with the caution must be short, but very distinct.

As it is essential that the officers and men should be well acquainted with the signals, they should be frequently sounded in their hearing, and explained by the trumpet-majors. And the commander should often perform the movements by them, in aid of the voice, and especially those adopted for attack and defence.

The soundings for duty will be explained in Part IV, and musical notes given for several of the signals, in the Plates.

REVIEWS.

A review is a survey or inspection of the officers, men
MOVEMENTS OF THE REGIMENT. 203

...and horses of a corps, to learn minutely their condition, the exact state of their arms and equipments, the organization and formation of the regiment; to superintend the exercise and movements, to introduce the established system of discipline and to enforce whatever may tend to promote order and regularity.

Reviews may be divided into general and inspecting reviews. The former are usually attended by a general officer, the latter by some officer specially charged with that duty.

69. General Review.

At a general review, the regiment is to be drawn up in line, according to the method given in Section 2—Part III, with this difference, that the whole of the staff officers are to form with the regiment. Swords, excepting those of the commissioned officers, are not to be drawn till the general approaches. The quarter-master, surgeon, assistant-surgeon, veterinary-surgeon, and paymaster are posted in one rank, in the interval of the first and second squadron, in line with the front rank; the sergeant-major, and quartermaster-sergeant, are in the rear of the interval in the serrefile rank. The trumpeters are posted in two ranks on the right of the regiment, with the trumpet-major on the right.

A camp colour is usually planted 100, or 150 yards before the centre of the regiment, to mark the place of the general, and is the point on which the movements are to be made, whether he is posted there or not.

1. Opening of the Ranks and Receiving the General.

-Commander. The Regiment—Will take Open Order! Squad. Officers. Rear Rank—Open Order—March!

Explanation.—At the caution to take open order, a marker takes post three horses' length in the rear of the front rank of each flank of the regiment. At the command, rear rank—open order—march! the rear rank will rein back, till it gains the length of three horses from the front rank, and dresses by the markers on the flank. The officers advance two horses' length in front.
of their respective troops and divide the space equally between them, those in the serrelie rank passing the intervals of the officers, the covering corporals moving to give them a passage, and returning immediately back to their places in the rear rank. The commissioned staff officers advance before the interval, and dress in line with the troop officers. The squadron officers are to take post two horses' length in front of the line of officers, before the centre of their squadrons, and the commander before the centre of the regiment, two horses advanced of the line of squadron officers. The standard officers advance the length of a horse in front of the front rank, with the colours furled. Swords of the officers to be at the slope, till the regiment draws, when they are to be brought to the carry.

In this position the regiment awaits the general, who being notified by the adjutant of its readiness, will approach on the right. When the trumpet-major perceives him about 100 yards from the regiment he will order the trumpets to sound the parade march and the commander will order,

**The Regiment—Will Draw Swords!**

Squad. Officers. **Draw—Swords!**

The non commissioned officers and men draw swords and place them at the carry; the standards unfurl and the officers come to the carry.

Right squadron officer then orders,

**First Squadron—Poise—Swords!**

The non commissioned officers and men poise swords, and cast eyes upon the general.

The general passes in front of the officers, from right to left; the trumpets sound a march and flourish when the general is 20 yards from the right; the officers present swords successively when he is eight yards on the right, and come to the carry when he passes their front.**

---

**The present sword, is executed as follows:**

1st. The sword at the carry, with a quick motion bring it up to the poise.

2d. With a slow motion drop the point forward about 45 degrees on the right of the horses' head, with the palm of the hand and flat of the blade up, lower the point towards the ground, keeping the blade and arm in a line
The standard officer salutes when the general is eight yards to the right, by lowering the colours on the right side of the horse's head, the end of the staff resting against the right hip, which is the centre of motion, swinging them to the right he will raise and pass them circularly over the horse's head to the left, thence with the same motion up to the usual position.

When the general arrives at the left flank of the right squadron, its officer commands,

*Carry—Swords!*

The officer of the second squadron then commands,

*Second Squadron—Poise—Swords!*

And when the general arrives at the left of the regiment, which may be known by the salute of the left officer, he commands,

*Carry—Swords!*

The general passes along the rear of the serrefile rank, to the right of the regiment, where the commander meets him and receives his orders for marching past.

The general then takes his post on the left of the camp colour, in front of the regiment, a little advanced, with his aids on his right, about the length of a horse retired.

2. **MARCHING PAST.**

**Commander.**  
*The Regiment—Will take Close Order—And Break into Column—Of Divisions!*

**Squad. Officers.**  
*Rear Rank—Close Order—March!*

**Do.**  
*Divisions—Right Wheel! March!*

**Divis. Officers.**  
*Halt! Dress!*

**Explanation.**—At the command to take close order, officers go to the left about and front the regiment; at the *march*, the rear rank moves up to close order and the officers return to their posts, the serrefiles to the rear by passing the intervals, the leaders, &c. by pass-

with the latter extended, and look the general full in the face.

3d. Bring the sword quickly to the poise just as the general passes the front.

4th. Quickly lower the sword to the carry.
ing round the left flank of the front rank of divisions. The standard bearers rein back into their places in the front rank.

The squadrons, then wheel to the right into column of divisions by command of their officers, and the division leaders take their posts on the pivots; the standards on the left flank of their right division, serrefile officers in the rear.

The regiment is now to march on a parallelogram in the walk and pass the general, the right flank of the column within six yards of his horse, in the following order. The commander at the head of the trumpeters, who are in two ranks at the head of the column with the trumpet major on the right; the commanders of squadrons at the head of their squadrons; the commissioned staff officers in one rank in the rear of the first squadron; the sergeant major and quarter master in the rear of the left squadron, followed by the division of appui, which is succeeded by the adjutant. The swords of the whole at the carry.

Commander. The Column—Will Advance!

Three markers trot out and mark the first, second and third angle of the parallelogram,

Squad. Officers. Column—Forward—March!

The commander will lead off to the right the length of the column, wheel the head to the left at the first angle, and advance to the second angle which is within six yards of the line of the general. The head of the column wheels to the left at the second angle, and advances towards the general. The last division having wheeled, the leading division officer commands, open order! The rear rank of that division slackens pace and takes open order; the leader of the division shifts along the front and places himself a horse’s length before the right flank of his division, the serrefile officer trots up and places himself the same distance before the left flank of the division. The succeeding divisions execute the same movement in succession, the leaders shifting to the right. The standards will advance and take post in the front of the left flank of the division, on their right. These movements are to be performed without halting.

Each division will now be preceded by two officers,
one in front of each flank. When within 30 yards of
the general, the trumpets commence sounding, and
when within 10 yards, the leading division officer orders
poise—swords! The division poise their swords and cast
eyes to the right; the officers present swords at the last
word, and, having past the general three yards, come to
the carry; the leader of the division commands, carry—
swords! and after proceeding 30 yards, commands, close
order—march! The rear rank closes, the officers take
their proper posts in column. The succeeding divisions
pass the general in a similar manner. The standards
salute with the officer on their right, and come to their
former position when he brings his sword to the carry.
The commander having saluted and past the general,
five yards turns to the right, returns his sword, trots up
and posts himself on the right of the general to receive
any remarks he may please to make.

The officer leading the first squadron conducts the
column, and wheels the head about at the third marker,
who is supposed to be posted the extent of the regiment
on the right of the general, and orders, brisk—trot!
which is repeated by the left squadron officer. The
column trots past the general to the right of the ground,
the officers at their column posts. No salute will be
paid in this movement, the officers being employed in
conducting their division correctly.

The head of the column wheels to the right followed
by the other divisions, which wheel in succession,
and moves to the right flank of the original alignment,
where the markers will have taken their posts on the
right and left. The regiment then marches and forms
by the inverse method on the alignment, as described
in Section 24—Part III, and the officers take their for-
mer posts.

If the regiment marches past, accompanied by corps
of infantry, it wheels at the third angle, marches to the
left flank of the alignment, then wheels to the left by
divisions, moves with its pivots on the alignment, and
forms up into line by the wheel of the whole at once.
The general accompanied by the commander then
advances to the centre of the regiment and gives his
orders for the exercise and movements.

These are usually the sabre exercise in divisions, dis-
mounting and linking; wheeling by threes; forming and deploying of columns; changing positions and such movements in attack and defence as he deems necessary to exhibit the general state of discipline in the regiment.

70. **Inspecting Review.**

At an inspecting review, the regiment is drawn up as described for a general review with officers advanced. The inspector accompanied by the colonel, passes along the front of the regiment from right to left and receives the salute of the officers and men, as in the general review, the trumpet sounding according to his rank. He then returns to the right, between the ranks, and directs the commander to wheel into column of troops. The commander orders,

*The Regiment—Will break into Column of Companies—*

For Inspection!

Squad. Officers. *Companies—Right. Wheel—March!*

Commanders of Companies. { Halt! Dress!}

Do. *Open order—March!*

The ranks open, officers advance two horses to the front and close to the centre, the covering corporals remaining in the rear rank; the sergeants pass the intervals, the coverers reining back to make room and form in the rear of the officers. The trumpeters and standard bearers trot off and form on the right of their respective troops, as soon as the wheeling is completed. The inspector accompanied by the commander, then begins with the right troop, receives the inspection report from the captain, examines the officers, sergeants and trumpeters. The captain then orders swords to be poised, which being examined by passing along the front and rear rank, are brought to the carry and returned by order of the captain. Pistols are then to be examined and returned in the same manner.

The captains will then order the troop to dismount, link and advance to the front and dress in two ranks as directed in Section 4—Part II. The inspector then examines the horse equipments, and dismounts and inspects the men, their equipments, dress, &c.
deficiencies and errors must be pointed out to the captain, and directions given for their remedy.

The inspector then mounts, and with the colonel and adjutant proceeds to the next troop, and makes a similar inspection. The troops remain dismounted till the inspection of the whole is completed. This done the inspector, commander and adjutant return to the centre and the commander orders a trumpeter to sound boots and saddles. The several captains mount their troops as has been taught, Section 4 of Part II. And the commander orders,

The Regiment—Will Wheel into Line!

Squad. Officers. Threes—About Wheel! March!

Do. Companies—Left—Wheel into Line! March!

Commanders of Troops. Halt! About Wheel—March! Halt!

Dress!

The troops wheel back into line, come about by threes, halt and dress, and the standards return to the centre of their squadrons, trumpeters to their places in the rear of the squadrons and the officers to their posts in line, for exercise.

The regiment will then perform the usual exercises of the sword and pistol, dismounting and mounting, wheeling of threes in the various directions; formation and movement of columns; the changes of position and front; movements in echelon; passage of defiles and the movements in attack and defence.

At an inspection the men should be clean and well dressed; their accoutrements nicely adjusted; arms bright; horses brushed and trimmed; the equipments complete and properly placed, and every article in order for action.

In his report the inspector will remark minutely and comparatively, on the performances of the squadrons, and particularly, "whether the formations are according to order; the marches made with accuracy in the required paces; distances in column at all times preserved; the wheelings quick, just and according to rule; the changes of position made with due celerity and justness; the march and charge in line uniform, steady and close, without floating, crossing or breaking: Whether the officers are alert in their changes of situation, exact
in their personal movements; loud, decided and pointed in their words of command, and intelligent, patient and hardy; the non commissioned officers and soldiers understand their duty, ride well, and the horses are active, vigorous and well broken."

He should examine the orderly books of the regiment and troops to see if the orders are registered, returns inserted, and, throughout, duly kept.

When the inspection is required to be very minute and a great variety of movements performed, it may be necessary to continue the inspection two or more days. This will be indispensable when the weather is unusually warm to avoid too great fatigue of the horses.

---

**PART IV.**

**DUTY OF CAVALRY IN THE FIELD.**

The duty of cavalry in the field, is extensive, and to treat of it in all its varieties, would fill a volume. We shall therefore select such parts only as relate to camps, guards, vedettes, patrols, and such other as naturally come within the limits of the work, and are deemed important for the young cavalry officer, on his first entering on service.

1. **Encampment of a Regiment, in the Field.**

An army usually encamps in order of battle, in two or more lines, with the cavalry on the flanks, or such other part of the line as the nature of the ground and other circumstances may require.

There are two methods of encamping usually followed in regular armies. In one the tents are arranged in two or more rows parallel to the alignment of the camp; in the other the rows are perpendicular to the alignment, each containing the tents of a company. Between the rows are spaces called *streets*, in which the horses are picketed in front of, and facing the tents.
of their several troops. The latter method is the most convenient and safe for cavalry.

Intervals are left between the battalions, squadrons, and regiments of the line, and to distinguish different corps, camp colours are sometimes fixed at the flanks.

The usual size of the tents of the non commissioned officers and men of the cavalry is seven feet broad and nine feet deep, and these accommodate five men and their horse equipments. The usual size of the captain’s tent or marquee, is ten and an half feet broad, fourteen feet deep and eight high; those of the subalterns a foot less; the major’s and lieutenant-colonel’s a foot larger, and the colonel’s two feet larger.

Round or bell tents have lately been adopted in some armies, both for infantry and cavalry. They contain each twelve men, and with poles complete weigh 43 pounds: the length of the pole is nine feet, and they require about forty pegs to make them fast.

The extent of the front of a regiment, allowing 50 rank and file to each troop, and eight yards interval between the squadrons, when drawn up as described Section 2—Part III, will be 120 yards including the officer’s files.

Suppose a regiment of two squadrons is required to encamp in the field in the line of infantry, and that each troop contains 50 rank and file with the number of officers proposed in the organization, Section 2—Part III.

If five men, which is the usual number, are assigned to a tent, each troop will require 10 for the rank and file. The sergeants will require one, the farrier, saddler and trumpeters one, the captain and first lieutenant one each, and the second lieutenant and cornet one; making 15 for each troop and 60 for a regiment of four troops exclusive of those for the field and staff officers.

The colonel, squadron officers, adjutant, paymaster, quarter-master and veterinary surgeon to be allowed one tent each; the surgeon and assistant one, and the sergeant-major and quartermaster-sergeant one.

The arrangement of the tents according to the perpendicular method will be as follows. Fig. 11—Plate 12.

Four rows, one for each troop, the rear of the tents of the two flank troops in line with the flanks of the regiment when drawn up in line in front; the rear of
the tents of the second and third troops in line with
the centre flanks of the squadrons. The sergeants' tents
are on the outward flanks of their troops facing the field;
the farrier, saddler and trumpeter's tent on the opposite
flank, next to the tents of the privates. Next to these
is the tent of the second lieutenant and cornet, 10 yards
from the front of the farrier and saddler's tent. The tent
of the first lieutenant is next, 10 yards from the last
mentioned tent; the captain's is next in order, the same
distance from the first lieutenant's.

The tents of the field officers are in a line parallel
with the alignment of the regiment, 12 yards from the
front of the tent of the captain, that of the commander
behind the centre of the regiment; those of the squad-
ron officers behind the centre of their respective squad-
rons. The staff officers' are in a line 15 yards in the
rear of the field officers; the surgeon's opposite to the
left, and veterinary surgeon's opposite to the right flank
of the regiment; the adjutant in the rear of the com-
mander's tent; the quartermaster behind the right squad-
ron officer; the paymaster behind that of the left squad-
ron officer. The tent of the sergeant-major and quar-
ter-master-sergeant is 10 yards behind that of the adjutant.

On the right and left of the sergeant-major's tent are
the waiters and baw-men's with their horses in the rear,
next to the waggons, when furnished with them. The
next in order are the mess tents and kitchens, and then
the sutler's and rear guard.

A row of tents, including the horses, interval, &c.
occupies in front as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old.</th>
<th>New.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tents,</td>
<td>3 yards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From the front pole of the tent to</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the picket rope,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For the horse,</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For the dung,</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>14</strong></td>
<td><strong>16</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distribution of the depths of a Camp.**

From the first line of parade to the front of the sergeants' tents,

*N. B. These tents open to the front.*

To the first picket of horses, 24 yards.
Every horse 3 feet.

The tents from the horses' heads.

Suppose 60 horses, 60
From the last tent of men to the
 subalterns' tent, 12

These tents open to the rear.

To the front line of captains, 15

These open to the front.

To the front of field officers, 15

Open to the front, opposite to the main street of the squadrons.

To the colonels, 10

To staff officers, 14

Open up the streets next the main street.

To the first row of pickets for baw-horses, 15

To the centre of the kitchens, 20

The kitchens 16 feet in diameter.

To the front of petty sutlers, 15

Directly in the rear of the kitchens; allowed 6 yards in front by 8 deep.

To the rear guard, 15

Total depth—yards, 220*

If the ground will not admit this depth, the space between the officers' tent must be contracted according to the given depth.

Each troop to be furnished with one baggage waggon for transporting the tents and camp utensils; these are placed in the rear of the baw-men's and waiter's tents, with their horses in the rear. The sinks are 50 yards in the rear of the kitchens.

If the regiment is composed of three or four squadrons it encamps in the same order, and the front will be more extended. The distribution and the depth is the same as has been described. The marquee of the commandant is always to be behind the centre of the regiment; the squadron officers' behind that of their squadrons and the troop officers' in the line with the men's tents as has been pointed out.

* This is the distribution given in Adye's *Pocket Gunner*, page 60 and 61, and differs a little from the arrangement and distribution which we have given.
The horses of the non commissioned officers are fastened to ropes wound at given distances round picket stakes, which are five or six feet long driven firmly into the ground in front of the tents. These ropes may enclose a parallelogram for the horses in each street, and should be placed one above another, so as to form a kind of fence round the horses. When a regiment is to remain sometime on the same ground a manger may be constructed in front of each row of horses, of crotches and poles, in which the hay, &c. is to be placed for them to feed. If the weather is hot a bower of brush may be erected to cover them from the sun, and if the tents are covered with the same, they will be more comfortable.

2. Camp Guards.

Each regiment of cavalry furnishes three guards called the camp, standard and quarter guards, which mount without horses. They are for the security of the camp and to preserve good order and discipline. The camp guard of the front line is placed 300 paces in front of the sergeants' tents; the standard guard 20 feet before the centre street, and the quarter guard 20 yards in the rear of the line of kitchens.

The camp guard may consist of one subaltern, one sergeant, two corporals, one trumpeter and twenty-one privates. It will furnish seven sentries, viz. one before the guard; three on the right and three on the left; these sentries with those of the infantry of both lines, forming a chain in front and rear of the camp.

The standard guard may consist of one sergeant, two corporals and fifteen privates; and will post five sentries, one before the guard and two on each side, equally divided in front of the regiment, and all in line.

The quarter guard may consist of one sergeant, one corporal, and twelve men, and will post four sentries, the first in the rear of the guard, the second on the right, the third on the left, behind the centre of the wings of the regiment, all in line, and the fourth at the door of the commanding officer.

The whole of the guards within the limits of the camp are to mount with swords and pistols; and during the
May swords are to be drawn and placed at the slope, and the pistols slung at the waist by the belt of the cartridge box, but at dusk, swords are returned, and pistols drawn and held in the right hand, the arms folded and the pistol resting over the elbow of the left arm.*

Two flank guards are usually taken from the whole line, consisting of officers and men sufficient for forming a chain of sentries on the flanks of the line; these are usually furnished by the infantry under the direction of the adjutant general.

When a regiment of cavalry encamps separately from the line, it furnishes guards sufficient for forming a chain of sentries on all sides of the regiment. In such case a second camp guard must be stationed in the rear, and they will extend their sentries round the flanks.

*If the cavalry are armed with carabines, the camp guard, &c. will do duty like infantry. On this service the carabine seems in many cases to be indispensably necessary. A few of them may be transported in the waggon with the baggage, to be used when the regiment encamps in the line.

Since the commencement of the printing of this work, an ingenious musket has been exhibited to the author, which is loaded at the breech with such surprising facility and quickness, as to discharge 25 shots in a minute. A magazine, capable of holding 42 charges, is constructed in the but of the piece, which is filled through an opening in the end. By a momentary operation of the machinery the piece is loaded. It is then cocked and fired like the common musket, brought down to the usual priming position, and by a quick motion half cocked, the pan shut and reloaded, all at one operation. When the magazine is exhausted of its 42 charges, it may be replenished in one minute.

The operation of loading is very simple; the firing may be discontinued and resumed at pleasure, and, as there is no ramming required nor handling of ammunition, so difficult on horseback, the musket seems to be exactly calculated for cavalry.

This curious machine is the joint production of two gentlemen of Chelsea, Vermont—viz. Dr. William Church, and Mr. Bartholomew.
The different guards of the camp are formed at the sound of the trumpet, and sent to their posts at an hour appointed by the commander in chief.

The guards which mount on foot, are formed by the adjutant before the centre of the regiment, in one or two ranks, according to their numbers, and sent to their posts at the hour assigned in orders.

All guards (excepting those which are honorary) should ordinarily consist of men sufficient for three reliefs. For example: If a post requires ten men, 30 privates are necessary; if fifteen are required, 45 will be the number, and the officers and non-commissioned officers are to be apportioned to the guards according to exigencies and military rule. Out-post and picket guards may be an exception to this rule, as they are sent out to the avenues of the camp in such numbers as the nature of the ground may require.

3. Out-Post and Picket Guards.

These are usually formed by detachments from the line, and their strength, as has been observed, must depend on the nature of the ground they are intended to occupy, as well as the proximity of the enemy.

If the country is open and level, the cavalry will furnish the pickets most advanced towards the enemy. The officers on this duty are particularly required to render themselves judges of their situations, and to post their vedettes in the most proper places.

The pickets are sometimes stationed within the limits of the camp, and always in readiness to mount and move on the shortest notice. The horses are to be saddled and the riders armed and booted, ready to mount. Such guards are called in-lying pickets. The duty of pickets is sometimes intrusted wholly to the light troops, in which case they are under the immediate direction of some detached general or field officer. The pickets from the line are generally formed on the grand parade by the officers of the day, and the one who is to command. The detachments are sent from the regiments under the care of the sergeant majors, where they draw up in line in two ranks, successively as they arrive; the commissioned officers advancing three horses' length.
FIELD DUTY.

Before the front rank, and the non-commissioned officers falling back two yards into the rear. The whole are then inspected, to see if the horses, arms and equipments are in complete order for action. When any are found unfit for duty, the sergeant major conducts them back and procures others, which he conducts to the parade, where he is then dismissed by the brigade major of the day.

If the number is under 64, the guard is formed into a squadron upon the principles given in Section 1—Part III; if less, into a troop, as in Section 2—Part II. After being told off by the brigade major of the day, the officers are ordered to their posts, then wheeled to the right and marched off, as follows. Suppose the guard to consist of men and officers sufficient for a squadron, viz. 3 officers, 8 sergeants, 8 corporals, and upwards of 64 privates, and to be drawn up in two ranks, the officers in front. The major commands

Officers—Non-commissioned Officers—To the Centre—March!

The officers close up before the centre, and take post according to rank, the first on the right, second on his left, and the last on the left of the whole, by exchanging places to bring them into this order; the sergeants and corporals trot round the flanks and form two ranks covering the officers; the corporals forming the rear rank.

The major then appoints them to their posts, as follows:

The first on the right of the first division.
Second on the left of the squadron.
Third on the right of the second half squadron,
Fourth on the right of the second division.
Fifth on the right of the fourth division.
Sixth in the serreole rank, two horses' length behind the right half squadron.
Seventh in the rear of the left half squadron.
Eighth in the rear of the centre of the squadron.
The sergeants are appointed to the rear of the sub-divisions, from right to left, in the order they stand. Five of the corporals cover the officers, behind whom they are standing when advanced; the remaining three (in the rear of the officers appointed to the serreole rank) take post, one on the right of each half squadron, and the other on the left of the whole, in the front rank, each covered by a private.
PART IV.

The officers being named to their posts, the major commands

Officers—And Non-commissioned Officers—To your Posts—Trot!

The whole trot to their posts, without regarding any particular order, and the officers draw their swords. Trumpeters in the mean time form on the right, in two ranks. The commander of the picket then advances to the officer of the day and receives the parol and countersign. He then returns to the guard, orders it to draw swords, wheels to the right by divisions, advances the column, wheels to left and marches past the officer of the day, who is supposed to have posted himself in front of the ground on which the guard was formed, the trumpets sounding, and officers saluting as in the review instructions.

If the guard does not exceed 64 men, it forms two divisions and four sub-divisions, as prescribed for a single troop, and it is formed by the brigade major of the day in a manner similar to the above.

If the number is less than 32, the guard may be drawn up in one rank, and divided into two divisions and four sub-divisions, and the officers posted as above.

The formation and movement completed, the commander marches off for his post conducted by a guide from the old guard, or by one acquainted with the position intended to be taken. No trumpets to sound during the march out, or return.

4. RELIEF OF GUARDS AND VEDETTES.

The “guards in camp will be relieved once in twenty-four hours; the out posts and picket guards will ordinarily be relieved in the same manner; but this must depend on their distance from camp and other circumstances which may sometimes require their continuing on duty several days. In this case they must be previously notified that they may prepare themselves accordingly.”

When the new guard arrives at the post, the officer of the old guard, having it mounted, commands, prepare—to guard! and his guard bring swords to prepare. The new guard marches past the other, in column of sub-die.
visions, inclines to the right, halts and wheels into line, ten yards on the right of the old guard, both fronting towards the enemy and dressed on the same alignment. The commander of the new guard then orders, *Prepare—To Guard!*

The guard come to prepare. The two commanders then meet before the interval, and the relieving officer receives his orders from the other; both then return to their guards and command, *Carry—Swords!*

The commander of the new guard orders, *Relieving—Non-commissioned Officers—To the Front—Trot!*

The right sergeant in the serenely rank, and the right covering corporal, trot forward four horses' length, turn about and front the guard. The orderly sergeant from the old guard then tells off as many vedettes from the right of the new guard as are then posted, and the advanced sergeant of the new guard accompanied by the advanced corporal, and one from the old guard for a guide, wheels off the relief and proceeds to relieve the old vedettes, beginning with the one posted at the guard.

If the ground is broken or the passages narrow, the relief will march by files; if open, in one or two divisions according to its strength, the sergeant and conducting corporal leading, the other corporal in the rear. On arriving within twelve yards of a vedette, the relief halts. The sergeant orders, *right vedette—advance!* He then conducts the right man up to the posted vedette, and both come to the *prepare to guard.* The new vedette receives the orders of the post from the old one which the sergeant must explain if it is not understood, both then carry swords. The relieved vedette returns with the sergeant to the relief, and forms on the left. If there are two vedettes at the post, which is usual on out guards, two will advance from the right of the relief and proceed in a similar manner.

The sergeant proceeds to the relief of the remaining vedettes, conducted by the guide corporal, and marches the old vedettes back and dismisses them at the old guard; which then marches off to camp.

The new guard takes the place of the old guard and dismount the whole, or a part, as circumstances shall require.
After the first relief of the vedettes, the corporals are to be employed in conducting the reliefs; the sergeants have charge of the patrols and reconnoitring parties.

At dusk all vedettes return swords and draw the left pistol, which they keep in the right hand, generally, inclined forward, on the right knee.

The method of relieving vedettes after dark varies a little from the above. The relief marches in the same order with swords drawn, and on approaching near the vedette, is challenged by him, who's there? The relief halts, and the conductor replies, relief! The vedette—countersign! placing the pistol in the left hand, ready to cock. The conductor of the relief then advances within three or four yards of the vedette and gives the countersign, in a low voice, when if right, the vedette replies, relief—advance! The relief advances with the conductor, who marches it up within twelve yards of the vedette and halts. The man on the right then advances with the conductor, receives the orders of the post, returns sword and draws the left pistol; the old vedette returns pistol and marches back with the conductor to the relief, forms on the left flank and draws sword.

The above methods will apply to the relief of the camp guards and sentries* with very little variation.

5. General Instructions for Pickets.

The commanding officer of a picket should consider the importance of the trust reposed in him, since on the due execution and faithful discharge thereof depends, not only the safety of his guard, but frequently that of the army from which he is detached. On this service he will have ample opportunity of displaying his judgment, skill and bravery.

"As soon as the picket arrives on its ground and the vedettes are posted, the commander must endeavor to make himself master of his situation, by carefully examining, not only the ground he actually occupies, but the heights within musket shot; the roads and paths leading to or near his post; ascertaining their breadth and practicability for cavalry and cannon. He should examine the

* For the sake of distinction, the term sentry will be applied when a vedette is posted on foot.
hollow ways that may cover the approach of an enemy; and, in short, consider all the points from which he is most likely to be attacked by infantry or cavalry. He will by these means be enabled to take measures to prevent the possibility of being surprised; and should he be attacked during the night, from the previous knowledge he has obtained of the ground, he will at once form a just estimate of the nature of the attack, and make his arrangements for defence with promptitude and decision."

An intelligent and careful officer will strengthen his post in front with pointed stakes erected in the ground breast high, trees felled across the roads, and pits dug in front, on those points most easily assailable by the enemy. For this purpose suitable axes and other implements should be provided and carried by the guard.

When a picket is to remain out for some time, provision and dry forage must be carried from camp sufficient for subsistence. The hay may be transported in waggons or twisted into ropes, trussed up and carried in the forage sacks, or fastened behind the saddles.

After the old picket has marched off, the commander will appoint the most intelligent sergeant for the orderly duty, and direct him to take down the names of the men, as in the following Table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Post</th>
<th>Hours the Vedettes are posted.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 &amp; 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>names of 1st. relief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2 &amp; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>do.2d.do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>do.3d.do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Explanation.* Suppose the guard to consist of 24 men and to furnish 8 vedettes; they are divided into three
reliefs, and the posts for the vedettes numbered, beginning with that before the guard; each man's name is placed against the number of the post at which he will be placed during the time he is on guard.

The vedettes are ordinarily relieved once in two hours: Thus—Suppose the men of the first relief to go on at 10 of the clock in the morning, they remain till 12, when they are relieved by the second relief; the second relief remains till 2, and are then replaced by the third; the third remains till 4, when the first is again put on duty. By this table an officer may determine what particular man was at any of the posts at any hour of the day or night.

Before a relief is sent off, they must be inspected by the commander, as well as the corporal, to see whether they are sober, their horses properly saddled and their arms primed, and every article in good order. The most intelligent and resolute men should be posted where the greatest danger is apprehended.

The duty of a vedette is to observe every thing that may deserve attention, and to give prompt intelligence of any new or extraordinary occurrence; the safety of the post will very much depend on his vigilance. He must take the greatest care to avoid a surprise; not suffer any person who advances to give the countersign to approach within reach of his horse, and always keep his pistols loaded, and in the night, one in his right hand.

On perceiving a small party approaching he will challenge briskly, *Who comes there?* and never suffer more than one to approach till the countersign is given. If the person has not the countersign, the vedette will order him to stand, and if within hearing of the guard, call for a sergeant, by a preconcerted signal, or hallooing. If the vedettes are posted double and a small party appear, one may advance toward them and challenge. If there be any thing suspicious in their appearance, or language, the vedette is not to let them pass immediately, *even if they have the countersign*, but call a sergeant, or conduct them to the guard; the other vedette remaining on the post. If the party are considerably numerous, one of the vedettes will notify the guard of their arrival. The commander will immediately mount the guard, if not already on horseback, and detach a party
to examine and bring them to him. The officer will examine them critically, inform himself of the cause of their being there, and of every circumstance that may tend to an explanation—remembering that 
distrust is the mother of security. He must demand the watch-
word, their pass or written order, and if found correct, and he is satisfied in every respect that there is no risk, he will permit them to pass.

If on being ordered to stand, the person will not obey, the vedette, after the established challenge, will fire his pistols, reload as soon as possible and retire to the guard, or remain on his post, as circumstances may require.

A vedette must not be allowed to smoke in the night, nor at any time to sing or whistle, or make any unnecessary noise, nor place a cover over his ears; but always be alert and listen to every noise. He should observe his orders exactly and inviolably; ask no reasons for them, nor dare to think them of little importance. The common excuse of a vedette, on being convicted of sleeping on his post, is, that he thought no bad consequences would attend it. How absurd! The necessity of his being vigilant is evident from his being ordered there. His instructions are to be his guide, and by rigidly complying with them, he is sure of discharging his duty and gaining the applause of his officers. Even bad weather cannot be pleaded in excuse for neglect of duty. But when the season is very severe and stormy, the commander may ease the vedettes by shortening the time of post duty to one hour.

No vedette should be posted at such distance from the guard as to be out of the hearing of a pistol shot. The officer of the day usually fixes upon the places for the guard and the vedettes; but circumstances may render it necessary for the commander of the picket to post more vedettes in the night, or alter their position; but he must report such alterations to the officer of the day.

If a flag from the enemy, which is usually attended by a trumpet or drum sounding or beating the chamade, approaches, the vedette will order it to halt at some distance from the post; if there be two vedettes, one will advance and cause it to halt, the other go back to the guard, to report the circumstance. An officer will ad-
vance to the flag and receive the communication which is desired to be made, and if it be only of small importance, will give a short receipt with a pencil; but if the letter or despatches are directed to head-quarters, or to the commanding general, and require a speedy answer, or are required to be delivered by the officer of the flag in person, the trumpet or drum will be detained at the guard, or in some house near, and the officer conducted blind folded to head-quarters, by an officer and two or three men of the guard, who will bring him back with the same precautions. If it is not required of the officer of the flag to deliver the despatches, he may be detained at, or near the guard, a receipt given for them and sent by an officer to head-quarters. The further disposal of the flag will depend on the orders sent from head-quarters; but so long as it is detained at the out post, none is to be permitted to hold any conversation with the persons composing it; in every other respect it is to be treated with becoming civility.

All deserters in the night are to be detained at the guard and interrogated, or immediately sent to the commander in chief.

If when night commences, no countersign or parole has been communicated to the commander, he will send a trusty sergeant for them to the proper officer, and in the mean time give a countersign of his own, till the ordered one arrives. If one of the guard desert, the countersign may be changed, along the whole chain of out posts, of which the officer of the day must be immediately notified.

The countersign only, is to be intrusted to the men, but the watch word and countersign are both given to the non-commissioned officers. No patrol must be allowed to pass without giving the watch word, which is to be done in a low voice by the non-commissioned officer to one of the picket.

In case of the desertion of a non-commissioned officer the watch word may be changed. And in the case of a change of either the watch word or the countersign, the neighboring advanced posts must immediately be notified of it to prevent surprises.

A picket should, if possible, be posted behind a small elevation or wood, in a hollow, or behind something
FIELD DUTY.

that will prevent its being seen by the enemy at a distance; but care must be taken that its operations are not impeded by these covers.

During the day the vedettes should be posted on elevated ground, which overlooks the country in front, and, if convenient, behind large trees, brush fences, or something that will cover them from the enemy's riflemen. In the night the low grounds must be guarded, and the vedettes may with safety be posted in open fields and plains.

The vedettes must not only be vigilant in observing the movements of the enemy, but attentive to their comrades forming the chain on the right and left; and if any are missing from their posts, or are seen to desert to the enemy, it must, as quick as possible, be communicated to the guard.

When the vedettes are considerably advanced of the picket, the commander may detach small parties who will secrete themselves in their rear to support the vedettes, if attacked by small parties of the enemy.

During the day the picket may be permitted to dismount their horses, but constantly to keep the bridle reins in their hands, ready to mount, and may rest themselves as much as is consistent with the safety of the guard.

In the night a part of the guard must constantly remain on horseback, and may be relieved alternately. But on no account, when the enemy are near, must any be permitted to lie down and sleep, but all must keep by their horses and ready to mount in an instant.

During the day, and especially if the weather is warm, the horses must be watered two or three times. If water be at a distance, one half or quarter only of the picket must be sent to the watering place, under the care of an officer, who will take every precaution to prevent a surprise. The officers should endeavor to find out some place for water in an open field, distant from a wood capable of covering a party of riflemen. If water is not to be procured in the field, resort must be had to the neighboring villages.

During the day the officers of the picket will frequently visit the vedettes to see if they understand their duty, and are fully acquainted with the orders.
PART IV.

The commanding officer should be furnished with a good spying glass, to watch the enemy's movements, and a dark lantern and materials for striking a light for transacting business in the dark.

If the weather is very cold and fires are necessary, they should be kindled some distance in the rear, in a hollow way, or behind a pond, and as much concealed as possible, and the men must be permitted to warm themselves by turns, and not more than two or three at a time.

When any authentic intelligence is received of the enemy, the commander of the picket is immediately to make a written report of it to head quarters, and to the commanders of the neighboring pickets and corps near him. A written report should also be made every evening, and sent by a non-commissioned officer to the officer of the day particularizing every thing important to be known.

Between every relief the vedettes must be visited by a patrol, and in the night several of these, under careful non-commissioned officers should be sent to visit the roads leading to the enemy. At day break the vedettes last relieved, may patrol the fields and country in front to find out the enemy who may have approached to attack the post.

If there be a river in front over which is a bridge, that might facilitate the approach of the enemy, the planks may be taken up and secreted in some place from which they may be easily taken and replaced, should it be necessary to pass the river and reconnoitre the enemy.

When the enemy is near and in considerable strength, it may be advisable, as soon as dusk commences, to draw back 200 or 300 yards and take new positions for the guards and vedettes, but this must be done under the orders of the officer of the day.

If the picket is compelled to fall back upon the camp, it must retreat slowly and in good order; and during the retreat, flankers must be detached to turn the enemy's wings and retard his advance, by the firing of pistols, sounding of trumpets and making every appearance of opposition in their power.

On the first appearance of the enemy, the commander will send notice to the camp, particularizing, as much as
possible, their strength, species of troops and every material circumstance, and if they are much superior in point of numbers, of the reality of which he must be sure, and he is to expect no reinforcement, he will call in his vedettes, return towards the camp and pass through such ways as will render his retreat safe and easy. Should the enemy press hard, he will retire briskly and on arriving at the camp, pass the intervals of the battalions or squadrons, form in the rear, and wait orders.*


Patrols are small parties of six, eight or more men detached from a guard, to insure the tranquility of a post, examine the vedettes, the roads and country in front, and to discover the approach of the enemy at a distance. They are usually commanded by the most intelligent, skilful and brave sergeants.

On the march the men move at some considerable distance from each other, and in the day time three or four may be sent 300 or 400 yards in front, especially when marching in a road. But in the night and in foggy weather, the advanced men will not precede the patrol more than 40 or 50 yards.

In the night, in open ground, a couple of men will march on each flank, but they must be careful not to lose sight of the main body, nor suffer themselves to be separated far from it by any ponds, morasses, &c.

In the day, on arriving at a hill, one or two men may be ordered to the top to view the neighboring country, and by a signal previously concerted inform the leader of any discoveries which they may make.

When passing a defile or hollow way, the men should separate from each other and follow in single file at some distance, but always keep in view, and the defile should be examined on each side, before the patrol enters.

In passing by hedges, ditches, and, indeed all fences, flankers must be sent on the out side, to examine them thoroughly; and if a flanker discovers an enemy and he

* In this section free use has been made of the excellent work of Baron Gross.
cannot, by other means, communicate his discovery, he must fire and close up to the patrol. Should the advanced men perceive an enemy, they will as quick as possible, inform the leader of the patrol of the discovery, and fall slowly back. If the patrol is suddenly attacked from an ambuscade it will resolutely rush on the enemy, or fall back, as circumstances require and gain a piece of ground favorable for defence.

In passing a village the patrol will lengthen out, and any suspicious places, such as houses, barns, gardens, &c. must be searched by a few faithful men. It will be prudent before entering the village to detach two or three men to examine the streets and enquire of the inhabitants whether the enemy are there; and some of the most respectable may be taken to the conductor of the patrol to give such information as they may possess, but they must be treated with civility if they communicate freely. The conductor must receive with great caution the intelligence they communicate, for they may be in the interest of the enemy and endeavor to deceive.

Patrols that are to visit the vedettes and sentries, usually consist of a non-commissioned officer and three or four men. The former leads and the latter follow, all in single file, with spaces of 20 or 30 yards. When challenged by vedette or sentry, the leader will reply patrol! The countersign will then be demanded by the vedette and the leader will advance and give it in a low voice.

The patrols in front of the sentries will critically examine hollow ways, bushes, hedges, ditches, groves, and every place which may cover a party. If the night is very dark the patrol closes up and moves in compact order, with two or three men a little advanced.

Patrols on their march out, must proceed very slowly, seldom out of a walk; the men in front will often halt and listen, and they may now and then, dismount and by their ears close to the ground, to listen for the march of cavalry or artillery, which may by this method in a still night be distinctly heard from a considerable distance. The men must not be permitted to sing, speak loud nor smoke, and the horses must be prevent-
ed as much as possible from neighing or making a noise with their feet.

When a patrol discovers a party approaching, and it is not known whether it is an enemy, the leader may secrete his patrol if the place offers a suitable cover, and, if he finds the party superior in number, let it pass, or he may hail, and if it proves an enemy, rush upon it in full vigor sword in hand, firing pistols if necessary.

When two patrols meet, one will challenge, who comes there! The patrol challenged answers, patrol! the other orders, stand patrol! and advances and demands the watch word; the conductor of the patrol challenged, then advances and gives the word, in a low voice, and if right, the leader of the other will give the countersign, that both may be satisfied. They will reciprocally enquire concerning discoveries made, and from what guard the patrols are detached.

Signals are sometimes ordered, by which patrols may ascertain each other; these are usually a certain number of strokes of the hand upon the saddle, whistlings, cries resembling those of certain animals, but watch words are deemed more safe.

When patrols return to their guards, they will report to the commander what has been discovered, and give a particular account of the route in going out and returning.

Parties for reconnoitring are usually commanded by an officer and non-commissioned officer, and consist of a greater or less number, according to the nature of the reconnaissance. The usual number is from 15 to 30 men, and they are drawn up in one or two ranks and told off into proper divisions. No white horses should be detached on this service; they are too conspicuous.

The duty of these parties is to examine a country of considerable extent, to note the roads, towns and villages; rivers, ponds, morasses; mountains, hills, defiles, bridges, ravines, woods and forests; the enemy's position and every thing important to be known.

The officer should furnish himself with a sketch-book in which he will insert his remarks and sketches and every particular appertaining to his duty.

In an enemy's country the greatest precaution must be used to avoid ambushes and surprises. A van and
rear guard with a few flankers will be necessary when there is a possibility of an attack.

When the object of the expedition is merely to reconnoitre, the commander will if possible avoid an engagement, and proceed with as much secrecy as the nature of the reconnaissance will admit.

If the party passes a bridge and is soon to return, the commander may leave a few men, under a faithful non-commissioned officer, who will disjoint the planks and be ready to take them up on the return of the party, should it be pursued by an enemy. All remarkable defiles should be guarded by similar parties, and trees may be cut, ready for falling, waggons, carts, &c. prepared to impede the enemy in case they drive back the party and pursue with superior numbers.

For short reconnaissances a few of the most alert men and best horses should be selected. If it is to examine the enemy's position only, the officer will ascend some neighboring mountain, or other elevation, and with a spying glass view every part of his encampment within sight, and note down his discoveries. The habit of judging of distances by the eye, will here be found of great importance, and if the officer is capable of making a good sketch of the country in view, he will make his report to the commander with much greater accuracy and precision.

If compelled to retreat from a superior enemy, the officer will place in his rear some of his best mounted men, and use every means in his power to retard their pursuit, and make a judicious retreat. And this he will be able to do if he possesses the genius of an officer, and has carefully studied the nature of retreats during his leisure hours in camp.

7. Of the Rounds.

By the rounds is understood a visitation of the guards and vedettes, through a certain circuit, by an officer, to see that all is well.

In camp, the rounds are divided into grand rounds and visiting rounds. The former is performed by a general officer, or officer of the day, the latter by captains or subalterns. The grand rounds generally go about mid-
right; the visiting rounds at any time between night fall and the break of day. The grand rounds receive the parol, the others give it to the guards. The ceremonies in both are nearly similar, and a description of one will serve for the other.

**METHOD OF GOING THE GRAND ROUNDS.**

When the officer arrives at the guard from whence he commences the circuit, he makes himself known by giving the countersign and parole. He then examines the guard and demands an escort consisting of a sergeant, or officer, and four men, with which he proceeds to the next guard.

When the rounds approach the guard, they will be challenged by the vedette on duty—the officer will reply, grand rounds! the vedette will reply, stand grand rounds! countersign! The rounds will halt and send a sergeant with the countersign. The vedette will then call, parade the guard! grand rounds! The guard parades with all possible expedition, with swords drawn. A sergeant advances towards the round with pistol in hand, and challenges. The reply is, grand rounds! the sergeant commands, countersign! A sergeant advances from the rounds and gives the countersign. The sergeant of the guard calls, countersign right! and the officer of the guard, advance rounds! The officer of the rounds advances to the officer, receives the parole, and examines the guard and gives such instructions as he thinks necessary. He then dismisses the escort, takes a new one and proceeds to the next guard.

When the rounds approach a vedette posted at a distance from the guard, he challenges, and is answered, grand rounds! he replies, stand grand rounds! countersign! a sergeant advances and gives the countersign; the vedette then calls, advance rounds! The rounds pass on, the vedette faces his horse towards them and when out of hearing turns towards the enemy as before.

When a general or officer of the day visits a guard in the day time, the guard poise swords, and the officers salute. All vedettes also poise swords to the same officer. After dark no honours are paid, and at no time when near an enemy, are any honours paid with trumpet or drum.
3. Trumpet Soundings, for Duty in Camp.

The daily signals of the infantry begin on the right of the whole, and are followed in succession, through the line to the left; to facilitate which the drummer's call is given by the drummers of the police, a quarter of an hour before the time for the signals, and the drummers assemble before the centre of their regiments, and when the signal begins on the right they commence beating according to the regulations.

The daily signals of the cavalry are sounded at the same time. When the drummers beat the call, the trumpets of the cavalry police sound the trumpeter's call, and the trumpeters assemble before their regiments. When the beat begins on the right, the trumpets commence sounding passing along the front to the right of their regiments, thence back to the left and thence to the centre where they finish.

The Sounds are as Follows.

1. Sounds previous to a march.

Boots and Saddles. This is sounded only when the whole are to march, and is the signal for the men to boot, saddle, strike and pack up tents and baggage, and prepare for a movement.

To Horse, is the signal to mount the horses and repair to the colours.

The March, is for the whole to move.

2. Duty Soundings.

Reveille, or morning call, is sounded at day break to advertise the army that the night is past; that all are to rise, dress and prepare for duty, and the vedettes and sentries to cease challenging.

Watering call, is sounded half an hour after the reveille, and is the signal for watering the horses. It is used also when any are to go from the camp for water.

Stable call, is used for stable duties and is the signal for the men to fodder and dress their horses.

Parade call, is the signal for assembling for the purpose of calling the roll and inspecting the men for duty, attending to orders, &c.
FIELD DUTY.

Retreat is sounded at sun set for calling the roll, warning the men for duty and hearing the orders for the next day. This is also used in the exercise for a retreat.

The watch, is the signal for repairing to quarters for the night. No soldier must leave his tent or quarters after this signal is sounded, unless permitted by an officer.

Alarm, is the signal for getting under arms and repairing to the alarm post on a sudden occasion.

Chamade, or parly, is used when a conference is desired with the enemy to make some proposals. Another called the appel is used for the same purpose.

Officer's call, Sergeant's call, Trumpeter's call, Dinner call. These are established by custom in camp.

Other signals are adopted for light troops in the field, and are for the communication of certain discoveries made by the out parties, or for particular movements. They are demi-vocal and as follows.

Signals, to extend—close—fire—cease firing—incline to the right—incline to the left—on discovering the enemy—if infantry—if cavalry—if infantry and cavalry—assembly of officers.

The signals are given by the trumpet or bugle and are adapted to cavalry or infantry. See Plates for notes to such signals as are mostly used.


Telegraphs of various descriptions have recently been invented, by which intelligence from a distance is rapidly communicated. They generally consist of machines erected on elevated grounds, within sight of each other, and are viewed with telescopes. Certain positions signify letters of the alphabet, by which words and sentences are communicated. Others give numbers which refer to words numbered in a small dictionary, by which sentences are made out with great facility and expedition. Each station is furnished with a dictionary, and a person well acquainted with the signals who notes down the numbers.

Example. Suppose it were required to communicat
the following:—A body of infantry are approaching. A preparatory signal is first made, to inform that some intelligence is to be transmitted followed by the signals for the digits composing the number standing against the word, which number being found in the dictionary points to the word body. The number for the word infantry is next communicated and the word found and written down, and so on till all the principal words are communicated.

The difficulty of transporting these machines has prevented this kind of telegraph from being extensively introduced into armies in the field. Others more simple have been proposed, which, in some measure, obviate the difficulty and seem to promise an important acquisition for an army. In these the signals are made by placing men or horses in certain positions, on elevated ground, who give the signals by shifting their places, or with white or red handkerchiefs displayed according to prescribed methods, which point out numbers set against the required words in the dictionary. Telescopes are also necessary in this method as well as careful observers.

A camp telegraph of this kind has been proposed by a Mr. Spencerr, an English gentleman, who says, "he has frequently asked a question with it at the distance of six miles, and received an answer within three minutes." He adds, "any officer of ordinary capacity will be able, after two hours application, to direct a station; any private will perform the duty of a signal-man after half an hour's drill; and the apparatus not being more cumbersome than a sergeant's pike, there seems no necessity whatever for a separate establishment to manage it."

This telegraph, with two others, one termed a homograph, the other a hypograph, which seem to be well calculated for reconnoitring parties, are described in the 1st. vol. of a periodical work entitled The Emporium of Arts and Sciences, lately published at Philadelphia, which our limits will not permit us to insert.

10. Roll Callings.

These are the calling over the names of the non-commissioned officers and men of a troop to see that all
FIELD DUTY.

are present. The duty appertains principally to the sergeants.

The duty is ordinarily attended in the morning and evening, at reveille and retreat, at which time the men parade without arms or horses. When the enemy are near, the rolls should be called three times, viz. morning, noon and at evening, and circumstances may render it necessary to attend to this duty more frequently. The roll is also usually called when the troops parade for exercise.

The officers will attend the morning roll call, to see that all is in order and no one absent. No non-commissioned officer or soldier, who is not on duty or sick, will be absent from roll call without the permission of his captain; and no commissioned officer without leave of the commander of the regiment.

11. Morning Inspection.

Every morning, previous to parading in squadron or regiment, the captains will inspect their several troops, to see that the dress of the non-commissioned officers and men is clean, whole and properly adjusted; their hands and faces washed—heads dressed according to the prescribed method; arms bright and in order—accoutrements properly adjusted; horses curried and brushed—saddles and harness well placed, and every article in the best order.

The field officers are to be attentive to these objects and reprimand such as appear negligent, and publicly applaud those who are remarkable for their good appearance. All who are willfully and repeatedly negligent must be severely punished.

Without a critical attention to these inspections many will contract a slovenly habit in their dress, arms, &c., and lose that military pride, without which nothing can be expected from an army.

After the inspection, the morning report is to be made out, exhibiting an exact state of the troop. See Morning Report after Contents.

The troop is supposed to contain 57 rank and file, three of whom are without horses and doing duty on foot.
PART IV.

The report is transmitted, by the orderly sergents to the adjutant of the regiment and an abstract of the whole laid before the commander of the regiment.

12. REGULATIONS FOR THE POLICE OF THE CAMP.

The police of the camp is usually regulated by the standing orders of the commanding general, which are varied according to circumstances; but as many parts of duty in camp are founded on fixed principles, regulations applicable to all cases may be prescribed, and are found extensively useful for young officers.

The man who relinquishes the ease and enjoyments of domestic life for the fatigues and dangers of the camp to protect his country against rapacity and injustice, deserves much from the public. His life should be rendered as comfortable as the nature of military service will permit. He should be well fed, and clothed, for on these his health, comfort and spirit essentially depend.

Nothing contributes more towards the promotion of discipline, order, and the comfort of the troops than a well regulated police: and though the hardships, casualties and diseases incident to the soldier cannot be wholly avoided, yet they may be alleviated and rendered much less frequent, by a due attention to the means which are in the power of every one, even when employed in the face of the enemy.

So far as respects health this is most strikingly true. Many diseases may be avoided by proper management; many valuable men preserved for the service of their country, if the officers will rigidly enforce the regulations established for the cleanliness of the camp. "Soldiers," says the ever to be lamented Dr. Rush, "are little more than adult children. That officer, therefore, will best perform his duty to his men, who obliges them to take the most care of their health."

When a regiment enters a camp, the field and staff officers must take care that the encampment is pitched regularly; that the sinks and kitchens are immediately dug in their proper places; and that no tents are pitched in any part of the camp contrary to the orders prescribed.
FIELD DUTY.

At least one officer of a troop must remain on the parade, to see that the tents are pitched on the ground marked out; and that the men fodder their horses, wipe their backs, and curry them down properly; and bring in their equipage, and place it in the tents.

The tents should be marked with the name of the regiment and troop to which they belong, to prevent their being lost or exchanged; the tents of each troop numbered; and each sergeant should have a list of the tents with the names of the men belonging to each.

When a regiment is to remain more than one night on the same ground, the soldiers must cut a small trench around their tents, to carry off the rain; but care must be taken that they do not throw the dirt against the tents.

An officer of each troop must every day visit the tents, to see that they are kept clean; that every utensil belonging to them is in proper order; that no bones or other filth be in or near them; and when the weather is fine, should order them to be struck about two hours at noon, and the straw and bedding well aired.

The soldiers should not be permitted to eat in their tents, except in bad weather. An officer of each troop must often visit the messes; see that the provision is good and well cooked; that the men of one tent mess together; and that the provision is not sold, nor disposed of for liquor.

If the weather is hot, and the troops are to remain on the ground several days, the men should construct a booth over the horses, to give them a shade. This may be made of crotched stakes and poles, and covered with boughs of trees, boards, or other materials which will obstruct the rays of the sun; it should be of a height sufficient to admit a mounted dragoon to ride under without stooping; the breadth sufficient to keep the horses completely in the shade.

The officers will often visit the horses, to see that the men fodder them regularly, and that they make a proper use of the forage; that they curry and brush them down every morning, and clear away the dung from their feet as often as once a day at least. For further directions concerning the horses, see next Section.

A subaltern, four non-commissioned officers, and a
trumpeter, must every day be appointed for the police of the regiment, who are on no account to be absent during the time they are on duty.

The officer of the police is to make a general inspection into the cleanliness of the camp, not suffer fire to be made any where but in the kitchens, and cause all dirt to be immediately removed, and either burnt or buried. He is to be present at all distributions in the regiment, and to form and send off all detachments for necessaries.

In case the adjutant is obliged to be absent, the officer of the police is to do his duty till his return; and for that purpose he must attend at the adjutant's tent, to be ready to receive and distribute any orders that may come for the regiment.

The trumpeter of the police must attend constantly at the adjutant's tent, to be ready at all times to communicate the necessary signals; and he must not absent himself on any account during the twenty four hours he is on duty, without leaving another trumpeter to supply his place till his return, nor then without leave from the adjutant.

When any of the men want water, they must apply to the officer of the police, who will order the trumpeter to sound the established signal; on which all who want water will immediately parade before the centre of the regiment, where the officer of the police will form and send them off under the care of two non-commissioned officers of the police, who are to be answerable that they bring back the whole detachment; and that no excesses are committed whilst they are out. Wood, and all other necessaries are to be brought in the same manner. Except in cases of necessity, not more than one detachment is to be out at a time.

The horses are to be watered at the sounding of the watering call in the morning, at noon, and at retreat sounding, under the command of their officers; not more than one squadron to water at a time. If the water is at a considerable distance from the camp, the men are to carry their arms. The commanding officer taking all necessary precautions to prevent a surprise by the enemy.

The quarter master must be answerable that the parade and environs of the encampment are kept clean;
that the sinks are filled up and new ones dug every four
days, and oftener in warm weather; and if a horse or
other animal dies near the regiment, he must cause it to
be carried at least half a mile from camp and buried.

No non-commissioned officer or soldier, shall be per-
mitted to pass the chain of sentries round the camp,
without permission in writing from the commanding offi-
cer of his regiment or squadron, which permission shall
be dated the same day, and shall, on the return of the
person to whom it was granted, be delivered to the ad-
jutant, who is to return it to the commanding officer,
with his report.

All officers whatever are to make it a point of duty to
stop every non-commissioned officer or soldier they meet
without the chain, and examine his pass; and if he has
not a sufficient one, or having one, is committing any
excess, the officer must conduct him to the nearest guard,
from whence he must be sent, with his crime, to his
regiment.

The sentries in camp must have orders, in case they
hear any alarm in camp, or at the advanced posts, to
acquaint the adjutant with it, who will inform the com-
manding officer of the regiment, or order an alarm sound-
ed, if the case require it.

When a regiment is in a standing camp, it must be
exercised by squadron, three or four times every week,
to keep it perfect in its evolutions. The commanding
officer should sometimes cause the alarm to be sounded,
to teach the men alertness in saddling and forming into
squadrons. By being thus habituated to turn out on the
shortest notice, the men will be taught steadiness, and
thereby freed from those fatal effects often occasioned by
that hurry of spirits and inattention to the commands of
their officers, which are common while those movements
are novelties.

In hot weather, the commandant should establish it
as a rule, to have the troops early out to their exercises,
before the cool of the morning is over; for by this (says
Doct. Pringle) not only the sultry heats are avoided,
but the blood being cooled, and the fibres braced, the
body will be better prepared to bear the heat of the day.
The exercise of the soldiers will be no less the means
of preserving their health, than of rendering them ex-
pert in their duty; frequent returns of these, early and
before the sun grows hot, will be more advantageous,
than repeating them seldom, and staying too long out
at a time.

The commandant must always march and encamp
with the regiment, and must not permit any officer to
lodge out of camp, nor in a house, unless in case of
sickness.

The adjutant will keep a book, in which he must ev-
ery day insert the general and other orders, and show
them to the commanding officer of the regiment, who
will add such as he thinks necessary for the regiment;
the adjutant must then assemble the first sergeants of
the several troops, make them copy the orders, and give
them their detail for the next day. He must also keep
an exact detail of the duty of the officers and non-
commissioned officers of his regiment, taking care to
regulate his roster in such manner as not to have too
many officers or non-commissioned officers of the same
troop on duty at the same time.

The adjutant must attend the parade at the turning
out of all guards or detachments; inspect their dress,
arms, accoutrements, ammunition, and horses, and form
them into divisions and sub-divisions.

Each captain will divide his troop into four or more
squads, placing each under the particular care of a non-
commissioned officer, who is to be answerable to the
captain for the dress and behaviour of the men, and the
good appearance of the horses and equipments of his
squad.

The first sergeant of each troop must keep a book
(under the inspection of the captain) in which he will
enter the name and description of every non-commis-
sioned officer and soldier; his trade and occupation; the
place of his birth, and usual residence; where, when,
and for what term he was enlisted; the bounty paid him;

* Several of the foregoing regulations are conformed.
13. REGULATIONS FOR THE CARE OF THE HORSES, AND FOR FORAGING DUTIES.

The care of the horses in the camp is an important part of the duty of officers and men, for on it depends, in a great degree, the regulation and utility of a corps. If neglected and not well fed, the horses soon lose that vigour and activity so essential for the duties of the field.

All officers are to make it a principal point of duty, to see that the men feed their horses regularly; that they rub down and curry them at stated times, keep them clean and in good order. They should impress upon them the importance of constant attention; of imbibing a regard for them, and assure them that to keep them in good condition will not only be of great advantage to themselves, but of the highest utility to the service, and the most sure means of insuring victory in an engagement.

Officers should frequently inspect the valises, to see that the horses are not encumbered with unnecessary baggage, and every thing superfluous should be taken away. Two shirts, a pair of shoes and stockings, a comb and brush for the horse, a pair for dressing his boots, blacking ball, a horse shoe with a few nails, and a blanket or cloak, are all that a soldier should be permitted to carry on ordinary occasions. A truss of hay, a small quantity of oats, and a few rations of provisions are sometimes to be added to his usual baggage; and, when without waggons, the tents and camp utensils must be distributed and packed upon the horses.

When in the vicinity of the enemy, the horses may be kept saddled for the space of twenty-four hours or longer; but the officers will see that the men now and then loosen the girths and wipe their backs, which will greatly comfort them, keep them at ease, and they will be less liable to gall. They must also notice particularly whether the pads are kept soft and clean from sweat and dust.

to the regulations adopted by congress for the infantry of the United States: they being applicable to cavalry as well as infantry.
After a march, the men will examine the horses' feet, to see whether any shoes are missing; or if those they have on, are not loose, misplaced or injure their feet, and they should pick and clean them of the earth and gravel which may have gotten between the shoes and soles. They will notice particularly, when they unsaddle, whether the saddles rest upon the withers or backbone, or press upon one part more than another—and whether the horses' backs are any way injured.

The officers should instruct the men in what manner to load their horses so as not to gall them; taking care that the baggage is well packed up and as much as possible of equal weight on each side, and that every article of equipage is in complete order.

If the forage is to be procured from a distance, a strong party must be ordered out to cover the foragers. The party will precede the foragers, and on arriving at the place appointed, the commander will form a chain or line of vedettes in front, as a protection from the enemy's parties. If the forage is supplied out of barns, or by some village, the quarter masters must attend to superintend the business.

Forage may be conveyed to camp in waggons, or it may be bound up into trusses with cords, and placed on the horses in front of the men. It is also conveyed in sacks placed behind the riders. Another and convenient method is to twist up the hay into ropes, by which it is much less bulky. Four or five days forage may in this manner be carried by one horse.

The forage allowed for a horse is different in different armies; but the common quantity is 14 pounds of hay, 10 pounds of oats, and 4 pounds of straw. This is called a ration, and is sufficient for the subsistence of a horse for one day. When green forage is provided, the quantity of the ration must depend on circumstances, but it should always be sufficient to keep the horse in vigour and fit for all kinds of service.

All foraging parties, either for the field or in villages, are to march in a regular manner to and from the places where they are to forage, and in case they are suddenly attacked, must disburden themselves as quick as possible, and form for action.

Every officer ordered on such service is answerable
FIELD DUTY.

that he brings back to camp all the men of his detachment. After the business is completed, and before he returns to camp, he should cause the roll to be called, to detect deserters, and while out, he will permit none to pass the chain of vedettes.

When the army makes a grand forage, it is done under the direction of the quarter master general, and requires the operation of the whole army.

14. METHOD OF ENTERING AND PITCHING A CAMP.

Before the troops arrive on the ground of encampment, the quarter master general, brigade quarter masters, and those of the regiment, are usually detached, with a guard, to mark out the proposed ground for the brigades and regiments. Stakes are to be erected, pointing out the flanks of the several corps, and the rows for the several companies. The quarter masters will then return to the column, leaving the detachment on the ground.

The head of the column, which we will suppose is formed of a regiment of cavalry, having arrived near the camping ground, the cavalry are ordered to return swords; the officers close up their divisions or sub-divisions, and dress the men correctly in column of manœuvr.e. The column continues the march until each regiment is opposite to the ground assigned by the quarter masters, when the several commandants halt and wheel up their regiments into line, facing the country in front of the camp. If the column approaches on the right, the formation of the line will be on the right, by the inverse method, the regiments in the rear of the first, passing the leading one and forming in succession.

The men for the pickets are then to be turned out, and sent to the grand parade or other rendezvous appointed, under the care of the sergeant-majors. After which the cavalry are dismounted, the horses linked, and the non-commissioned officers and men dismissed to pitch the tents and erect the pickets; which being completed, they return to the horses and unlink. The tents of the officers are to be pitched by the waiters under the direction of the officers.

The squadron officers will now order the horses to the pickets as follows:
PART IV.

From the Centre—Of Half Squadrons—File to the Rear! March!

Each squadron breaks back, in the centre, and files off perpendicularly to the rear; the men leading their horses by the bridles. Having marched down the length of the tents, half squadron officers halt and face their half squadrons towards their tents, and order the men to unsaddle, unbridle, and advance and picket the horses. The proper front rank, which will be in the rear after facing the tents, will lead up their horses on the right hand of their, then, file leaders. The saddles, bridles, and all equipments are next to be deposited in the tents, packed up in such order that they may be placed upon the horses without the least confusion, and each man must be able to distinguish his own in the darkest night. The standards are to be lodged in the marquee of the commander.

In the position above described, the horses of each troop will face the tents of their riders in one rank; each horse occupying one yard of the picket. If after facing to the pickets a greater space is found, the horses must passage till they have the proper space.

The horses of the non-commissioned officers are in front of their tents, the sergeants next to the field; those of the officers are picketed with those of the waiters, in the rear of the regiment.

The guards for the camp are now to be formed in front of the regiment, and sent to their posts by the adjutant.

15. Village Camp.

In champaign countries, cavalry are often detached from the main army to occupy villages on the flanks, front or rear. In such positions, security depends altogether on vigilance; and when opposed by a skilful enemy, disasters of the most fatal kind have been the consequence of the least remissness of duty. Hence it is evident that none but officers of great skill and prudence should be entrusted with command of such posts.

Villages selected for cavalry should be situated in level, open countries, and ought to be small rather than extensive; if on ground a little elevated above the neighboring country they are the more eligible.
FIELD DUTY.

When a regiment arrives at the village intended for quarters, it will march in, with the usual van and rear guards, to that part intended to be occupied, and form in line, and the vanguard must then detach parties to reconnoitre the village and country towards the enemy. A main guard proportioned to the strength of the regiment will be detached and posted where the commander shall direct. This is generally near the quarters of the commanding officer. Other small guards will be posted at the most important avenues, if the commander deems them necessary.

The main guard will plant vedettes in and about the village, in such manner as to discover the approach of an enemy in all directions, and also one at the quarters of the commander, and one at each of the quarters of the squadron officers. If there be a steeple in the village, a sentry must be ordered into it; but if none, on some other elevated place from whence a view may be had of the adjacent country. A picket guard must also be detached, formed and posted on the road leading to the enemy, at such distance from the village as the commander shall direct, which will plant vedettes in front and on the flanks sufficient for its security.

The guards being sent off and the standards lodged, the men will be dismissed to their quarters. Particular parts of the village will be assigned for the different troops, and the men of each, quartered five, six or more in a house, as compact as possible, and as contiguous to their horses as the nature of the places assigned them will permit. A parade or alarm post must be chosen for each troop, and the horses placed in sheds, bovels, &c. open on one side, from which they may be taken expeditiously on any sudden emergency.

The officers are to be quartered near their respective troops; and, at least one, must constantly remain within their limits, to prevent the men from wandering from their horses and quarters.

The various duties must be regulated in the orders of the commander; conforming as nearly to those in standing camps as circumstances will permit.

A place should be assigned some distance from the village for a rallying point for the whole, should they suddenly be driven from the village, by the attack of
superior enemy. This place ought to be on the side the
commander judges most convenient for retiring to the
army.

During the day the guards will constantly employ pa-
trols to reconnoitre the vicinity of the village, and the
several posts where they are stationed. At night the
advanced picket will return to the village, or to some
place near it, as shall be ordered; and, if the com-
mander deems it necessary, the picket may be strengthened
with additional men.

In the night the vedettes are to be posted double, and
patrols sent in all directions to examine every place ca-

cable of covering the approach of an enemy. These
patrols will march with the greatest caution, and on dis-
covering an enemy must give the alarm to the guards with
all possible expedition.

On an alarm being given, the several troops will turn
out, repair to their alarm posts and draw up in order,
from which they will quickly be marched to that for the
regiment, and form in their places in line, and the com-
mander will take such measures for defence as the case
may require.

If the enemy rush suddenly into the village with su-
perior force and carry it, the whole will retire to the
place assigned for rallying, without waiting to form at
their several alarm posts; and when in the vicinity of
the enemy it may be necessary to keep the horses con-
nstantly saddled, bridled, and ready for mounting, with
all their equipage, on the shortest notice.

As a security against night attacks, all avenues of the
village should be blocked up with carts, waggons, che-
vaux-de-frise, &c. and the roads leading out towards the
enemy cut into trenches, filled with abattis, and the
bridges taken up, or destroyed. Private passages should
be prepared through which cavalry may sally out to at-
tack the enemy, or to retreat when overpowered.

The instructions that have been given for the general
conduct of guards, sentries, patrols, &c. in field camps,
are applicable to those stationed in villages, to which
recourse may be had for further particulars.

The rules that have been given for securing the quar-
ters of cavalry in a village, will indicate clearly the pre-
cautions to be taken when farm houses or other detach-
ed buildings are selected for quarters. For small detachments, such situations are, in general, the most eligible for night quarters. Very small parties may select some unfrequented place, and lie concealed through the night, without detached guards or patrols. But vedettes should in all cases be planted round the post, to give timely notice of the approach of any party of the enemy who may accidentally discover the place. To be taken by surprise through remissness, is scarcely pardonable, however small the party may be; and for one of considerable numbers, no excuse can be pleaded. Cavalry, in particular, should have sufficient time to form and retire, or to prepare for defence as the case may require. In general they should endeavour to get into open fields where they can make use of the sword, the only weapon from which they can expect protection and victory.

16. Decampment and March of an Army.

When the army is to break up its quarters and move to a new position, the commander in chief will give the necessary orders to the quarter master general and the general of the day, who will lay out the order of march agreeably to the plan of the general.

If the movement is to commence in the morning, the orders are generally given out at retreat beating the preceding evening. These orders are usually short, and merely prescribe the order and time of the march, without a detail of the minutiae. Suppose at retreat beating the following is communicated to the troops.

**General Orders.**

Camp at (Date.)

"The army marches to-morrow: the general will beat at three of the clock in the morning, the assembly at four, and the march will commence a quarter of an hour after, from the right in one column—the brigades will succeed in the order they are encamped, with the field pieces at the head of their respective regiments; the park of artillery will follow the brigades, and the baggage will close the column."

Note.—The order of march for the cavalry, heavy artillery and baggage, must be adapted to the nature of the coun-
try and other circumstances. If the enemy are in front, the baggage moves in the rear; but if they are in the rear, it moves in front; in both cases under the direction of a guard commanded by a field or general officer; and whatever place it may occupy in the line of march, the waggons are to follow, in the same order as their respective regiments, and the waggons of each company in their numerical order. The field artillery will march with the brigades to which it is attached, unless circumstances determine the general to order otherwise. If the country is open and champaign, the cavalry usually precede the infantry; but if broken and covered it will succeed it, and it is sometimes accompanied by the horse artillery.

The order for the march being given, the adjutant-general will appoint the field officers for the advance, baggage and rear guards, and give the details to the majors of brigade, for their respective quotas of officers and men for the guards. It is the practice in some armies to assign the duty of the guards to particular corps or regiments, by which the delay and trouble of detaching from the several brigades, and forming of the guards, are avoided; and, in sudden movements, this seems to be the most eligible method.

At three of the clock in the morning, the time mentioned in the orders, the beating of the general commences, and the cavalry sound boots and saddles. The infantry and cavalry immediately strike their tents and load the waggons; the cavalry, boot, saddle the horses, strike their tents, pack up furniture and equipage, and load their waggons, and prepare for the march. If the cavalry are not furnished with waggons, the tents, picket ropes, &c. are loaded upon the bay-horses which must march with the other baggage of the army, and the cooking utensils must be divided among the men. The officers must superintend the striking of the tents and loading of the baggage, to see that every article is properly packed and duly placed.

At the first signal, all general and staff officer guards, and the camp and quarter guards join their regiments.

At beating the assembly, the trumpets sound to horse, the cavalry immediately mount and form into squadrons in front of their regiments; the infantry form in like
manner into battalions. The guards ordered are then formed on the grand parade and marched by their commander to their assigned places.

The signal for march being given, the whole break into column, the cavalry by sub-divisions, and commence the march; the waggons fall into the line as ordered, for which the quarter masters are responsible. The majors of brigade will see that all out-posts and pickets are called in at the proper time to their places in the column.

The vanguard will march at a distance from the column, more or less, according to its strength and the nature of the country; and must never enter a defile, wood, &c. without first examining it to avoid falling into ambuscades. It will detach flankers and patrols to reconnoitre and scour all woods, defiles, &c. and should send parties to the top of every neighboring hill to view the country in front.

On the march no orders are to be communicated by calling out, but must be sent by the adjutants or brigade majors from regiment to regiment.

Though troops do not always march in presence of an enemy, it is of infinite consequence that they should march as if in expectation of meeting him. Equal and well ordered marches, contribute not only to the preservation of the army, but accustom the troops to regularity, and teach them at all times to be in readiness to attack or defend.

When a single regiment is to decamp from a village or other detached post, the colonel or commanding officer will issue his orders, specifying the time for sounding the necessary signals, which, like the orders for the march of an army, are usually given out the evening preceding the march.

The adjutant will appoint the officers for the van, rear and baggage guards, assemble the orderly sergeants by trumpet signal from the trumpeter of the police, and give them the detail of non-commissioned officers and men required from their respective troops, and direct them to copy the orders for marching which they will deliver to their captains.

The vanguard may consist of a lieutenant, two sergeants, one trumpeter and thirty-two rank and file; the rear and baggage guards of a sergeant, corporal, trumpeter and eight men each.
123

PART IV.

Half an hour previous to the time for marching, the trumpeter of the police will sound the trumpeter’s call to assemble the trumpeters of the regiment, and at the time mentioned in the orders the whole are to sound boots and saddles; the trumpet-major conducting them into every part of the village where the regiment is quartered. At the signal, the whole boot, saddle and bridle horses, pack up furniture and load the baggage, and all guards retire to the regiment and prepare for the march.

At to horse sounding, the whole mount and form into troops on their several parades, march to the regimental parade where they form into squadrons; the guards ordered are then formed into corps by the adjutant and told off into proper divisions according to their strength.

The adjutant will inspect the arms, equipments, men and horses, to see that they are in complete order for action, and if he finds any man or horse sick or lame, he will send him back to his troop to be exchanged for another.

The baggage must be placed in the rear of the regiment, to precede the rear guard, if not otherwise ordered, and the wagons, if any, are to be numbered and follow regularly in numerical order. On a march the baggage should be curtailed as much as possible. A superfluity tends greatly to impede the march, and draws after it a thousand inconveniences. When suddenly attacked, it is frequently abandoned to the enemy and lost. It is therefore the duty of the commanding officer to permit no one to carry any article that is not absolutely necessary. The officers will on all occasions confine themselves to such as are of the first importance.

At the time prescribed for moving, the trumpets sound a march and the whole wheel by subdivisions and march, preceded by the vanguard. If the roads are too narrow for subdivision the column will diminish front, and if necessary march by files.

When a regiment is to decamp secretly, orders are transmitted to each troop verbally, particularizing the time and order of march. At the time pointed out, the baggage is packed up and loaded, the troops formed as silently as possible, and the movement commences without sound of trumpet.

THE END.